Homotopical Algebra

Yuri Berest, Sasha Patotski

Fall 2015
These are lecture notes of a graduate course MATH 7400 currently taught by Yuri Berest at Cornell University. The notes are taken by Sasha Patotski; the updates will appear every week. If you are reading the notes, please send us corrections; your questions and comments are also very much welcome.

Emails: berest@math.cornell.edu and apatotski@math.cornell.edu.
## Contents

1 Homotopy theory of categories ................................. 1
   1 Basics of simplicial sets ................................ 1
      1.1 Definitions .............................................. 1
      1.2 Motivation ............................................... 3
      1.3 Examples of (co-)simplicial sets ......................... 5
      1.4 Remarks on basepoints and reduced simplicial sets .... 7
      1.5 The nerve of a category .................................. 8
      1.6 Examples of nerves ....................................... 9
      1.7 One example: the nerve of a groupoid .................... 11
   2 Geometric realization ....................................... 12
      2.1 General remarks on spaces ............................... 12
      2.2 Definition of geometric realization ...................... 14
      2.3 Two generalizations of geometric realization ............ 16
      2.4 Kan extensions .......................................... 17
      2.5 Comma categories ....................................... 20
      2.6 Kan extensions using comma categories ................... 22
   3 Homotopy theory of categories .............................. 24
      3.1 The classifying space of a small category ................ 24
      3.2 Homotopy-theoretic properties of the classifying spaces 26
      3.3 Connected components .................................... 28
      3.4 Coverings of categories .................................. 28
      3.5 Explicit presentations of fundamental groups of categories 30
      3.6 Homology of small categories ............................. 31
      3.7 Quillen’s Theorem A ..................................... 34
      3.8 Fibred and cofibred functors ............................. 37
      3.9 Quillen’s Theorem B ..................................... 39

2 Algebraic K-theory .............................................. 41
   1 Introduction and overview .................................. 41
   2 Classical K-theory .......................................... 42
      2.1 The group $K_0(A)$ ....................................... 42
      2.2 The group $K_1(A)$ ....................................... 42
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2.3</td>
<td>The group $K_2(A)$</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.4</td>
<td>Universal central extensions</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Higher K-theory via “plus”-construction</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1</td>
<td>Acyclic spaces and maps</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2</td>
<td>Plus construction</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3</td>
<td>Higher K-groups via plus construction</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4</td>
<td>Milnor K-theory of fields</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.5</td>
<td>Loday product</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.6</td>
<td>Bloch groups</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.7</td>
<td>Homology of Lie groups “made discrete”</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.8</td>
<td>Relation to polylogarithms, and some conjectures</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Higher K-theory via Q-construction</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.1</td>
<td>Exact categories</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.2</td>
<td>K-group of an exact category</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.3</td>
<td>Q-construction</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.4</td>
<td>Some remarks on the Q-construction</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.5</td>
<td>The $K_0$-group via Q-construction</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.6</td>
<td>Higher K-theory</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.7</td>
<td>Elementary properties</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.8</td>
<td>Quillen–Gersten Theorem</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>The “plus = Q” Theorem</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.1</td>
<td>The category $S^{-1}S$</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.2</td>
<td>K-groups of a symmetric monoidal groupoid</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.3</td>
<td>Some facts about H-spaces</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.4</td>
<td>Actions on categories</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.5</td>
<td>Application to “plus”-construction</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.6</td>
<td>Proving the “plus=Q” theorem</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Algebraic K-theory of finite fields</td>
<td>89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.1</td>
<td>Basics of topological K-theory</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.2</td>
<td>$\lambda$-structures and Adams operations</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.3</td>
<td>Witt vectors and special $\lambda$-rings</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.4</td>
<td>Adams operations</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.5</td>
<td>Higher topological K-theory and Bott periodicity</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.6</td>
<td>Quillen Theorem for Finite fields</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.7</td>
<td>$\lambda$-operations in Higher K-theory</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Final remarks on Algebraic K-theory</td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.1</td>
<td>Historic remarks on algebraic and topological K-theory</td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.2</td>
<td>Remarks on delooping</td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3 Introduction to model categories

1 Model categories ......................................................... 109
   1.1 Axioms ................................................................. 109
   1.2 Examples of model categories .................................... 111
   1.3 Natural constructions ............................................. 112
2 Formal consequences of axioms ..................................... 114
   2.1 Lifting properties .................................................. 114
   2.2 Homotopy equivalence relations .................................. 116
   2.3 Whitehead Theorem ................................................ 121
3 Homotopy category ...................................................... 122
   3.1 Definition of a homotopy category ............................... 123
   3.2 Homotopy category as a localization ............................ 124
   3.3 Derived functors ................................................... 126
   3.4 Quillen’s Adjunction Theorem ................................... 127
   3.5 Quillen’s Equivalence Theorem ................................... 129
   3.6 About proofs of of Quillen’s Adjunction and Equivalence Theorems ............................................. 130
   3.7 Example: representation functor ................................ 132

A Topological and geometric background .......................... 135

1 Connections on principal bundles ................................ 135
2 Coverings of spaces .................................................... 137
3 Homotopy fibration sequences and homotopy fibers .......... 140
Chapter 1

Homotopy theory of categories

1 Basics of simplicial sets

1.1 Definitions

Definition 1.1.1. The simplicial category $\Delta$ is a category having the finite totally ordered sets $[n] := \{0, 1, \ldots, n\}$, $n \in \mathbb{N}$, as objects, and order-preserving functions as morphisms (i.e. the functions $f: [n] \to [m]$ such that $i \leq j \Rightarrow f(i) \leq f(j)$).

Definition 1.1.2. A simplicial set is a contravariant functor from $\Delta$ to the category of sets $\text{Sets}$. Morphism of simplicial sets is just a natural transformation of functors.

Notation 1.1.3. We denote the category $\text{Fun}(\Delta^{\text{op}}, \text{Sets})$ of simplicial sets by $\text{sSets}$.

Definition 1.1.4. Dually, we define cosimplicial sets as covariant functors $\Delta \to \text{Sets}$. We denote the category of cosimplicial sets by $\text{cSets}$.

There are two distinguished classes of morphisms in $\Delta$:

\[
\begin{align*}
    d^i: [n-1] &\hookrightarrow [n] & (n \geq 1, \ 0 \leq i \leq n) \\
    s^j: [n+1] &\twoheadrightarrow [n] & (n \geq 0, \ 0 \leq j \leq n)
\end{align*}
\]

called the face maps and degeneracy maps respectively. Informally, $d^i$ skips the value $i$ in its image and $s^j$ doubles the value $j$. More precisely, they are defined by

\[
\begin{align*}
    d^i(k) &= \begin{cases} 
        k & \text{if } k < i \\
        k + 1 & \text{if } k \geq i 
    \end{cases} \\
    s^j(k) &= \begin{cases} 
        k & \text{if } k \leq j \\
        k - 1 & \text{if } k > j
    \end{cases}
\end{align*}
\]

Theorem 1.1.5. Every morphism $f \in \text{Hom}_\Delta([n], [m])$ can be decomposed in a unique way as

\[
f = d^{i_1}d^{i_2} \cdots d^{i_r}s^{j_1} \cdots s^{j_s}
\]

where $m = n - s + r$ and $i_1 < \cdots < i_r$ and $j_1 < \cdots < j_s$. 

1
The proof of this theorem is a little technical, but a few examples make it clear what is going on. For the proof, see for example Lemma 2.2 in [GZ67].

**Example 1.1.6.** Let $f : [3] \to [1]$ be \{0, 1 $\mapsto$ 0; 2, 3 $\mapsto$ 1\}. One can easily check that $f = s^0 \circ s^2$.

**Corollary 1.1.7.** For any $f \in \text{Hom}_\Delta([n], [m])$, there is a unique factorization

$$f : [n] \xrightarrow{s} [k] \xrightarrow{d} [m]$$

where $s$ is surjective and $d$ injective.

**Corollary 1.1.8.** The category $\Delta$ can be presented by $\{d^i\}$ and $\{s^j\}$ as generators with the following relations:

$$d^id^j = d^id^{j-1} \quad i < j$$

$$s^is^j = s^is^{j+1} \quad i \leq j$$

$$s^jd^i = \begin{cases} d^is^{j-1} & \text{if } i < j \\ id & \text{if } i = j \text{ or } i = j + 1 \\ d^{i-1}s^j & \text{if } i > j + 1 \end{cases}$$

**Corollary 1.1.9.** Giving a simplicial set $X_* = \{X_n\}_{n \geq 0}$ is equivalent to giving a family of sets $\{X_n\}$ equipped with morphisms $d_i : X_n \to X_{n-1}$ and $s_i : X_n \to X_{n+1}$ satisfying

$$d_id_j = d_{j-1}d_i \quad i < j$$

$$s_is_j = s_{j+1}s_i \quad i \leq j$$

$$d_is_j = \begin{cases} s_{j-1}d_i & \text{if } i < j \\ id & \text{if } i = j \text{ or } i = j + 1 \\ s_jd_{i-1} & \text{if } i > j + 1 \end{cases}$$

The relation between (1.1) and (1.2) is given by $d_i = X(d^i)$ and $s_i = X(s^i)$.

**Remark 1.1.10.** It is convenient (at least morally) to think of simplicial sets as a graded right “module” over the category $\Delta$, and of cosimplicial set as a graded left “module”. A standard way to write $X \in \text{Ob}(s\text{Sets})$ is

$$X_0 \xleftarrow{d_i} X_1 \xleftarrow{d_i} X_2 \ldots$$

with solid arrows denoting the maps $d_i$ and dashed arrows denoting the maps $s_j$.

**Definition 1.1.11.** For a simplicial set $X_*$ the elements of $X_n := X[n] \in \text{Sets}$ are called $n$-simplices.
**Definition 1.1.12.** For a simplicial set $X_\ast$, an $n$-simplex $x \in X_n$ is called degenerate if $x \in \text{Im}(s_j: X_{n-1} \to X_n)$ for some $j$. The set of degenerate $n$-simplices is given by

$$\{\text{degenerate } n\text{-simplices}\} = \bigcup_{j=0}^{n-1} s_j(X_{n-1}) \subseteq X_n$$  \hspace{1cm} (1.3)

An alternative way to describe degenerate simplices is provided by the following

**Lemma 1.1.13.** The set of degenerate $n$-simplices in $X_\ast$ is given by

$$\bigcup_{f: [n] \to [k]} X(f)(X_k) = \text{colim}_{f: [n] \to [k]} X(f)(X_k).$$  \hspace{1cm} (1.4)

**Proof.** Exercise. \hfill \Box

**Remark 1.1.14.** Although formula (1.3) looks simpler, formula (1.4) has advantage over (1.3) as it can be used to define degeneracies in simplicial objects of an arbitrary category $\mathsf{C}$ (at least, when the latter has small colimits).

**Definition 1.1.15.** If $X = \{X_n\}$ is a simplicial set, and $Y_n \subseteq X_n$ is a family of subsets, $\forall n \geq 0$, then we call $Y = \{Y_n\}$ a simplicial subset of $X$ if

- $Y$ forms a simplicial set,
- the inclusion $Y \hookrightarrow X$ is a morphism of simplicial sets.

The definition of simplicial (and cosimplicial) sets can be easily generalized to simplicial and cosimplicial objects in any category.

**Definition 1.1.16.** For any category $\mathsf{C}$ we define a simplicial object in $\mathsf{C}$ as a functor $\Delta^{\text{op}} \to \mathsf{C}$. The simplicial objects in any category $\mathsf{C}$ form a category, which we will denote by $s\mathsf{C}$.

**Definition 1.1.17.** Dually, we define a cosimplicial object in $\mathsf{C}$ as a (covariant) functor $\Delta \to \mathsf{C}$. The category $\text{Fun}(\Delta, \mathsf{C})$ of cosimplicial objects in $\mathsf{C}$ will be denoted by $c\mathsf{C}$.

### 1.2 Motivation

In this section we provide some motivation for the definition of simplicial sets, which might seem rather counter-intuitive. We will discuss various examples later in section 1.3 which will hopefully help to develop some intuition.

**Definition 1.2.1.** The $n$-dimensional geometric simplex is the topological space

$$\Delta^n = \left\{ (x_0, \ldots, x_n) \in \mathbb{R}^{n+1}: \sum_{i=0}^{n} x_i = 1, x_i \geq 0 \right\}$$
Thus \( \Delta^0 \) is a point, \( \Delta^1 \) is an interval, \( \Delta^2 \) is an equilateral triangle, \( \Delta^3 \) is a filled tetrahedron, etc. We will label the vertices of \( \Delta^n \) as \( e_0, \ldots, e_n \). Then any point \( x \in \Delta^n \) can be written as a linear combination \( x = \sum x_ie_i \), where \( x_i \in \mathbb{R} \) are called the barycentric coordinates of \( x \).

To any subset \( \alpha \subset [n] = \{0, 1, \ldots, n\} \) we can associate a simplex \( \Delta_\alpha \subset \Delta^n \), which is the convex hull of vertices \( e_i \) with \( i \in \alpha \). The sub-simplex \( \Delta_\alpha \) is also called \( \alpha \)-face of \( \Delta^n \). Thus we have a bijection

\[
\{\text{subsets of } [n]\} \leftrightarrow \{\text{faces of } \Delta^n\}.
\]

**Definition 1.2.2.** By a finite polyhedron we mean a topological spaces \( X \) homeomorphic to a union of faces of a simplex \( \Delta^n \):

\[
X \simeq S = \Delta_{\alpha_1} \cup \cdots \cup \Delta_{\alpha_r} \subset \Delta^n.
\]

The choice of such a homeomorphism is called a triangulation.

Infinite polyhedra arise from simplicial complexes, which we define next.

**Definition 1.2.3.** A simplicial complex \( X \) on a set \( V \) (called the set of vertices) is a collection of non-empty finite subsets of \( V \), closed under taking subsets, i.e.

\[
\forall \sigma \in X, \emptyset \neq \tau \subset \sigma \Rightarrow \tau \in X.
\]

Note that the set \( V \) is not necessarily finite, nor \( V = \bigcup_{\sigma \in X} \sigma \). To realize a simplicial complex \( X \), we define an \( \mathbb{R} \)-vector space \( \mathbb{V} \) spanned by elements of \( V \), and for every \( \sigma \in X \) we define a simplex \( \Delta_\sigma \subset \mathbb{V} \) to be the convex hull of \( \sigma \subset V \subset \mathbb{V} \).

**Definition 1.2.4.** The realization \( |X| \) of a simplicial complex \( X \) is the union

\[
|X| = \bigcup_{\sigma \in X} \Delta_\sigma \subset \mathbb{V}
\]

equipped with induced topology from \( \mathbb{V} \), i.e. \( U \subset |X| \) is open if and only if \( U \cap \Delta_\sigma \) is open in \( \Delta_\sigma \) for all \( \sigma \in X \).

**Definition 1.2.5.** A polyhedron is a topological space homeomorphic to the realization \( |X| \) of some simplicial complex \( X \).

The quotient of a simplicial complex by a simplicial subcomplex may not be a simplicial complex again. Simplicial sets are then a generalization of simplicial complexes which “capture in full the homotopy theory of spaces”. We will make this statement precise later when we will discuss Quillen equivalences, and in particular the Quillen equivalence between topological spaces and simplicial sets.

To any simplicial complex one can associate a simplicial set in the following way. Suppose we have a simplicial complex \( (X, V) \) with \( V \) being totally ordered. Define \( SS_n(X) \) to be a simplicial set having \( SS_n(X) \) the set of ordered \((n + 1)\)-tuples \((v_0, \ldots, v_n)\), where \( v_i \in V \) are
vertices such that \( \{v_0, \ldots, v_n\} \in X \). Notice that we do allow \( v_i = v_j \) for some \( i \neq j \) in the tuple \((v_0, \ldots, v_n)\), and \( \{v_0, \ldots, v_n\} \) means the underlying set of that tuple.

If \( f: [n] \to [m] \) is a morphism in \( \Delta \), the induced map \( f_*: SS_m(X) \to SS_n(X) \) is given by \((v_0, \ldots, v_n) \mapsto (v_{f(0)}, \ldots, v_{f(n)}) \). In particular, the face map \( d_i: SS_n(X) \to SS_{n-1}(X) \) is given by

\[
d_i: (v_0, \ldots, v_n) \mapsto (v_0, \ldots, \hat{v}_i, \ldots, v_n) \quad (omitting \ the \ i-th \ element)
\]

and the degeneracy map \( s_j: SS_n(X) \to SS_{n+1}(X) \) is given by

\[
s_j: (v_0, \ldots, v_n) \mapsto (v_0, \ldots, v_j, v_j, \ldots, v_n) \quad (repeating \ the \ j-th \ element)
\]

Exercise 1. 1. Show that the simplicial set \( SS_s(X) \) determines \( X \). More precisely, there is a bijection between \( X \) and the set of non-degenerate simplices in \( SS_s(X) \).

2. For any (ordered) simplicial complex \((X, V)\) (i.e. \( V \) is totally ordered) we have homeomorphism \(|X| \simeq |SS_s(X)|\), where \(|SS_s(X)|\) denotes the geometric realization of the simplicial set \( SS_s(X) \). (see section 2.2 for the definition of geometric realization).

1.3 Examples of (co-)simplicial sets

Example 1.3.1 (Discrete simplicial sets). To any set \( A \in \text{Sets} \) we can associate a simplicial set \( A_* \in \text{sSets} \) defined by \( A_n = A \), \( \forall n \) with all maps \( d_i, s_j \) being \( \text{id}_A \). This gives a fully faithful embedding \( \text{Sets} \hookrightarrow \text{sSets} \). The simplicial sets arising in this way are called discrete.

Example 1.3.2 (Geometric simplices). Consider the \( n \)-dimensional geometric simplex \( \Delta^n = \{(x_0, \ldots, x_n) \in \mathbb{R}^{n+1}: \sum x_j = 1\} \) (see Section 1.2).

Given \( f: [m] \to [n] \), the corresponding \( \Delta^f: \Delta^m \to \Delta^n \) is defined to be the restriction of the linear map \( \mathbb{R}^{m+1} \to \mathbb{R}^{n+1} \), sending the vertex \( e_i \) to \( e_{f(i)} \). The collection \( \Delta^* = \{\Delta^n\} \) forms a cosimplicial set.

Remark 1.3.3. The assignment \([n] \mapsto \Delta^n\) defines a faithful functor \( \Delta \hookrightarrow \text{Spaces} \) which gives a topological realization of the simplicial category. Sometimes we will identify \( \Delta \) with the subcategory of \( \text{Spaces} \) which is its image. Historically, the category \( \Delta \) first arose as this subcategory.

Example 1.3.4 (Singular set functor). Given a topological space \( X \), define \( S_n(X) := \text{Hom}_{\text{Top}}(\Delta^n, X) \). Then \( S_* (X) = \{S_n(X)\} \) is naturally a simplicial set, called the set of singular simplices in \( X \) (or the singular set of \( X \)).

More generally, for any cosimplicial object \( Y: \Delta \to C \) in a category \( C \) and any contravariant functor \( F: C^{\text{op}} \to \text{Sets} \) the composition

\[
\Delta^{\text{op}} \xrightarrow{Y^{\text{op}}} C^{\text{op}} \xrightarrow{F} \text{Sets}
\]

gives a simplicial set.
Example 1.3.5 (Standard simplices). Recall that for any category $\mathbf{C}$ one has the Yoneda embedding $h: \mathbf{C} \hookrightarrow \text{Fun}(\mathbf{C}^{op}, \mathbf{sSets})$ sending each object $X \in \text{Ob}(\mathbf{C})$ to the functor $h_X = \text{Hom}_\mathbf{C}(\cdot, X)$ represented by this object. In particular, when $\mathbf{C} = \Delta$, the Yoneda functor gives an embedding $\Delta \hookrightarrow \mathbf{sSets}$.

The standard $n$-simplex is a simplicial set $\Delta[n]_*$ defined as the image of $[n] \in \text{Ob}(\Delta)$ under the Yoneda embedding.

Thus $\Delta[n]_*$ is just a simplicial set with

$$\Delta[n]_k = \text{Hom}_\Delta([k], [n]) \simeq \{(j_0, \ldots, j_k) \mid 0 \leq j_0 \leq \cdots \leq j_k \leq n\},$$

where $f: [k] \to [n]$ corresponds to the sequence of its values $(f(0), \ldots, f(k))$ in $[n]$.

The face and degeneracy maps are then given by

$$d_i: (j_0, \ldots, j_k) \mapsto (j_0, \ldots, \widehat{j_i}, \ldots, j_k), \quad s_i: (j_0, \ldots, j_k) \mapsto (j_0, \ldots, j_i, j_i, \ldots, j_k)$$

If $n = 0$, there is only one $k$-simplex in $\Delta[0]_k$ for each $k$, namely, $\Delta[0]_k = \{(0, 0, \ldots, 0)\}$, and the only non-degenerate simplex in $\Delta[0]_*$ is the 0-simplex $(0)$.

If $n = 1$, the set of $k$-simplices in $\Delta[1]_*$ is given by

$$\Delta[1]_k = \{(j_0, \ldots, j_k) \mid 0 \leq j_0 \leq \cdots \leq j_k \leq 1\} = \{(0, \ldots, 0, 1, \ldots, 1) \mid 0 \leq i \leq k + 1\},$$

so $\Delta[1]_k$ has $k + 2$ simplices in it. Obviously, there are three non-degenerate simplices: two are 0-simplices $(0)$ and $(1)$, and one is the 1-simplex $(0, 1)$.

Another way to describe $\Delta[n]_*$ is given by the following

Lemma 1.3.6. Simplicial set $\Delta[n]_*$ (co)represents the functor $\mathbf{sSets} \to \mathbf{Sets}$, $X_* \mapsto X_n$. In other words, there is a natural isomorphism of sets $\text{Hom}_{\mathbf{sSets}}(\Delta[n]_*, X_*) \simeq X_n$.

Proof. This is an immediate consequence of Yoneda lemma. \hfill \square

Note that the assignment $[n] \mapsto \Delta[n]_*$ defines a fully faithful functor $\Delta \to \mathbf{sSets}$, which is nothing but the (covariant) Yoneda embedding. Combined together the simplicial sets $\Delta[n]_*$ define a cosimplicial simplicial set (i.e. a cosimplicial object in the category $\mathbf{sSets}$) $\Delta[\bullet]_* \in \text{Ob}(\mathbf{sSets})$.

Remark 1.3.7. A convenient way to think about cosimplicial simplicial sets is as of “graded bimodules” over $\Delta$ (cf. remark 1.1.10).

There are face maps $d^i: \Delta[n]_* \to \Delta[n + 1]_*$ and degeneracy maps $s^j: \Delta[n]_* \to \Delta[n - 1]_*$. For example, $d^0: \Delta[0]_k \to \Delta[1]_k$ sends $(0, 0, \ldots, 0)$ to $(1, 1, \ldots, 1)$.

Example 1.3.8 (Simplicial spheres). Consider the standard $n$-simplex $\Delta[n]_*$. The boundary $\partial \Delta[n]_*$ of $\Delta[n]_*$ is the simplicial subset of $\Delta[n]_*$ of the form

$$\partial \Delta[n]_* = \bigcup_{0 \leq i \leq n} d^i(\Delta[n - 1]_*) \subset \Delta[n]_*.$$
The simplicial $n$-sphere $S^n_*$ is the quotient simplicial set $S^n_*=\Delta[n]_*/\partial\Delta[n]_*$. In other words, $S^n_*$ is defined by $S^n_*=\{*,\Delta[n]_k\setminus(\partial\Delta[n]_k)\}$, there is a commutative diagram of simplicial sets

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\partial\Delta[n]_* \\
\downarrow
\end{array}
\begin{array}{c}
\Delta[n]_* \\
\downarrow
\end{array}
\begin{array}{c}
\ast \\
\downarrow
\end{array}
\begin{array}{c}
S^n_*
\end{array}
\]

where $\ast$ is the (discrete) simplicial set associated to the single element set $\{\ast\}$.

The simplicial 1-sphere is called the simplicial circle $S^1_*$. We've seen above that $\Delta[1]_k\simeq\{(0,\ldots,0,1,\ldots,1),\ i=0,\ldots,k+1\}$. With this identification,

$$\partial\Delta[1]_k=d^0(\Delta[0]_k)\cup d^1(\Delta[1]_k)=\{(0,\ldots,0),(1,\ldots,1)\},$$

and $\ast$ is represented by $\ast=\ast_k=(0,\ldots,0)\sim(1,\ldots,1)\in S^n_k$. There are two nondegenerate simplices in $S^n_1$, the simplex $(0)$ of degree 0 and the simplex $(0,1)$ of degree 1.

This construction of the simplicial circle arises from the cellular decomposition of the topological circle $S^1$ consisting of two cells, $\ast$ (a point) and $e$ (an arc), i.e. $S^1=\ast\cup e$. The simplicial set generated by $\{\ast\}$ and $e$ is $S^n_1$.

A simple but far reaching observation (due to A.Connes) is that $S^n_1$ can naturally be identified with $Z/(k+1)Z$ by sending $s^k_0(\ast)$ to $0\in Z/(k+1)Z$, and $s_{k-1}\ldots s_{i-1}\ldots s_0(e)$ to $i\in Z/(k+1)Z$. This means, in particular, that the set $S^n_1$ comes equipped with an action of the cyclic group $Z/(k+1)Z$. The point is that $S^1$ is an (abelian) topological group, and we would like to recover the group structure from its simplicial model $S^n_1$. The simplicial circle $S^n_1$ is a simplest example of something called a cyclic set.

### 1.4 Remarks on basepoints and reduced simplicial sets

In this section, we clarify two important notions: basepoints and reduced simplicial sets.

Recall that Lemma 1.3.6 gives for any $X_* \in s\text{Sets}$ and any $n \geq 0$ a natural isomorphism of sets $\text{Hom}_{s\text{Sets}}(\Delta[n]_*,X_*) \simeq X_n$. Picking an element $x_0 \in X_0$ corresponds to a map of simplicial sets $f_{x_0}: \Delta[0]_* \to X_*$. But $\Delta[0]_k=\{(0,\ldots,0)\}$ has only one element in each degree $k \geq 0$. Fixing any element $x_0 \in X_0$ we get a family of simplices $\{f_{x_0}(0,\ldots,0) \in X_k\}_{k\geq 0}$, one in each degree $k$. Note that $f_{x_0}(0,\ldots,0)$ is just $s^0_k(x_0) \in X_k$.

**Definition 1.4.1.** A basepoint in a simplicial set $X_*$ is a sequence $\{s^0_k(x_0) \in X_k\}$. In other words, a basepoint is a morphism of simplicial sets $\ast \to X_*$, where $\ast$ denotes the discrete simplicial set corresponding to the one element set $\{\ast\}$.

**Definition 1.4.2.** A pointed simplicial set is a simplicial set with a choice of a basepoint. We denote the category of pointed simplicial sets by $s\text{Sets}_\ast$.

If the degree zero part $X_0$ of a simplicial set $X_*$ consists of a single point $X_0=\{\ast\}$, we call $X_*$ a reduced simplicial set. Note that a reduced simplicial set $X_*$ has a canonical (in fact, unique) basepoint. We denote the category of reduced simplicial sets by $s\text{Sets}_0$. 
1.5 The nerve of a category

Let $C$ be a small category. The nerve $B_* C$ of the category $C$ is a simplicial set defined as follows:

- $B_0 C = \text{Ob}(C)$
- $B_1 C = \text{Mor}(C)$
- $B_2 C = \{\text{composable } c_0 \to c_1 \to c_2\}$
  
  $\vdots$

- $B_n C = \{\text{composable } c_0 \to \cdots \to c_n\}$

The face maps are given by

$$d_i : [c_0 \to \cdots \to c_n] \mapsto [c_0 \to \cdots \to c_{i-1} \to \widehat{c}_i \to c_{i+1} \to \cdots \to c_n]$$

where the notation $\widehat{c}_i$ means that $c_i$ is omitted for $i = 0, n$ and replaced by the composition $[c_{i-1} \to \widehat{c}_i \to c_{i+1}] \mapsto [c_{i-1} \to c_{i+1}]$ for $i = 1, 2, \ldots, n-1$.

The degeneracy maps $s_j$ are defined by inserting $\text{id}: c_j \to c_j$ in the $j$-th position:

$$s_j : [c_0 \to \cdots \to c_n] \mapsto [c_0 \to \cdots \to c_j \to c_j \to \cdots c_n]$$

There are several other ways to look at the simplicial set $B_* C$. Let $s, t : \text{Mor}(C) \to C$ denote the source and target map, sending a morphism $f : i \to j$ to $i$ and $j$, respectively. Consider the fibre product

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
\text{Mor}(C) \times_C \text{Mor}(C) & \longrightarrow & \text{Mor}(C) \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow s \\
\text{Mor}(C) & \longrightarrow & C \\
\text{id} & \downarrow t & \\
& & C
\end{array}$$

By definition, $\text{Mor}(C) \times_C \text{Mor}(C) \subset \text{Mor}(C) \times \text{Mor}(C)$ is the set of pairs $(f, g) \in \text{Mor}(C) \times \text{Mor}(C)$ such that $s(f) = t(g)$. But the last condition characterizes precisely the composable morphisms in $C$. Thus, $B_2 C = \text{Mor}(C) \times_C \text{Mor}(C)$. By the same argument, one easily sees that

$$B_n C = \text{Mor}(C) \times_C \text{Mor}(C) \times_C \cdots \times_C \text{Mor}(C).$$

The face maps and degeneracy maps are exactly the structure maps defining the corresponding fibered products.

Yet another useful way of thinking about the nerve construction which can be pretty useful is the following.

Recall that any poset $J$ gives rise to a category which we denote $\mathcal{J}$. The objects of $\mathcal{J}$ are $\text{Ob}(\mathcal{J}) = J$, and for $i, j \in \text{Ob}(\mathcal{J})$, $\text{Hom}(i, j) = \emptyset$ if $i \nleq j$, and has exactly one arrow $i \to j$ otherwise.
For example, \([n] = \{0 < 1 < \cdots < n\}\) is naturally a poset (in fact, a totally ordered set). Then \([n] = \{0 \to 1 \to 2 \to \cdots \to n\}\) where the arrows represent the non-identity morphisms. It is easy to check that \([n] \mapsto \Delta \hookrightarrow \text{Cats}\) defines a fully faithful embedding \(F: \Delta \hookrightarrow \text{Cats}\) from the simplicial category \(\Delta\) to the category \(\text{Cats}\) of all small categories. Then, any \(C \in \text{Ob}(\text{Cats})\) represents the contravariant functor \(h_C: \text{Cats} \to \text{Sets}\) whose composition 
\[\Delta \hookrightarrow \text{Cats} \xrightarrow{h_C} \text{Sets} \xrightarrow{F^{op}} \text{Sets}\]
with \(F^{op}\) gives a simplicial set, which coincides with the nerve \(B^* C\) of \(C\), i.e. 
\(B^* C = h_C \circ F^{op}\).

Example 1.5.1. Let’s take for example \(C = \Delta[n]\). Let’s compute its nerve using the above observation. We have 
\(B^k[n] = \text{Hom}_{\text{Cats}}(\Delta[k], \Delta[n]) = \Delta[n]_k\) where the isomorphism comes from the full faithfulness of the embedding \(\Delta \hookrightarrow \text{Cats}\). Thus, 
\(B^* [n] = \Delta[n]_*\).

1.6 Examples of nerves

In this section we give some examples of simplicial sets arising in geometry, topology and other parts of mathematics.

Example 1.6.1 (Nerve of a covering). Let \(X\) be a topological space and let \(U = \{U_\alpha \}_{\alpha \in I}\) be an open covering of \(X\). Define a category \(X_U\) as follows. The set of objects of \(X_U\) is 
\(\text{Ob}(X_U) = \{(x, U_\alpha) \mid x \in U_\alpha \in U\} = \bigsqcup_{\alpha \in I} U_\alpha\)
and the morphisms between \((x, U_\alpha)\) and \((y, U_\beta)\) are defined by 
\[
\text{Hom}_{X_U}((x, U_\alpha), (y, U_\beta)) = \begin{cases} 
0, & \text{if } x \neq y \\
x \to y, & \text{if } x = y \text{ in } U_\alpha \cap U_\beta
\end{cases}
\]
In other words, \(\text{Mor}(X_U)\) is the disjoint union \(\bigsqcup U_\alpha \cap U_\beta\) of non-empty pairwise intersections of elements in the covering \(U\). Then \(B_n X_U = \bigsqcup U_\alpha \cap \cdots \cap U_\alpha\) is the set of non-empty \((n + 1)\)-wise intersections of open sets from the covering, with \(d_i\)’s and \(s_j\)’s given by the obvious inclusions. This simplicial set is called the nerve of the covering \(U\).

As a (trivial) example, take \(U = \{X\}\). Then \(B_n X_U = X\) viewed as a discrete simplicial set. We will see later that \(X_U\) is an example of a topological category, and for a “good” (locally contractible) covering \(U\), the geometric realization of \(B_n X_U\) recovers the homotopy type of \(X\).

Example 1.6.2 (Nerve of a group). Let \(G\) be a (discrete) group. It can be viewed as a category with a single object \(*\) and the morphism set given by \(G\). In particular, all morphisms in the category \(G\) are isomorphisms. We will denote this category by \(G\) to distinguish it from the group \(G\) itself.
We have $B_n \mathcal{G} = G \times \cdots \times G = G^n$ because all morphisms are composable. The degeneracy map $s_j$ inserts 1 into the $j$-th position, i.e.

$$s_j : (g_1, \ldots, g_n) \mapsto (g_1, \ldots, 1, \ldots, g_n)$$

and the map $d_i$ is defined by

$$d_i : (g_1, \ldots, g_n) \mapsto \begin{cases} (g_2, \ldots, g_n), & \text{if } i = 0 \\ (g_1, \ldots, g_i g_{i+1}, \ldots, g_n), & \text{if } 1 \leq i \leq n - 1 \\ (g_1, \ldots, g_{n-1}), & \text{if } i = n. \end{cases}$$

Notice that, in general, the maps $d_i$ and $s_j$ are not group homomorphisms. However, if $G$ is abelian then this is the case, and so, for abelian $G$, the nerve of $\mathcal{G}$ is actually a simplicial abelian group $B_n \mathcal{G}$ (i.e. a simplicial object in the category $\text{Ab}$ of abelian groups).

**Example 1.6.3** (Bar construction). Let $X$ be a set (a topological space, $C^\infty$-manifold, etc.). Construct a simplicial set $E_\ast X$ as follows. Let $EX$ be the category with $\text{Ob}(EX) = X$ and $\text{Mor}(EX) = X \times X$. Set $E_\ast X := B_\ast (EX)$. Explicitly, we have $E_nX = X \times \cdots \times X = X^{n+1}$. The maps $d_i$ and $s_j$ send $(x_0, \ldots, x_n)$ to $(x_0, \ldots, \hat{x}_i, \ldots, x_n)$ and $(x_0, \ldots, x_j, x_j, \ldots, x_n)$ respectively.

Let now $X = G$ be a (discrete) group. Note that the category $EG$ differs from $\mathcal{G}$ in that $\text{Ob}(EG) = G$ while $\text{Ob}(\mathcal{G}) = \{\ast\}$. Then $E_\ast G$ is a simplicial set equipped with a right $G$-action, and there is a projection $E_\ast G \to B_\ast G$ with the fibre $G$, which is actually a fibration (we will define what that is later).

**Example 1.6.4** (Action groupoid). Let $X$ be a set equipped with a left action of a group $G$. Define the category $\mathcal{C} = G \times X$ with $\text{Ob}(\mathcal{C}) = X$ and $\text{Hom}_\mathcal{C}(x, y) = \{g \in g \mid g.x = y\}$. This category is a groupoid (i.e. every morphism is an isomorphism) called the action groupoid.

Then $B_\ast \mathcal{C} = G^n \times X$ with $d_i$'s and $s_j$'s as defined in the example 1.6.2 understanding that $d_n$ sends $(g_1, \ldots, g_n, x)$ to $(g_1, \ldots, g_n \cdot x)$ where $g_n \cdot x$ denotes the action of $g_n$ on $x \in X$. Then $B_\ast \mathcal{C} \simeq E_\ast G \times_G X$ is called the simplicial Borel construction.

**Remark 1.6.5.** We will see later when discussing geometric realization that geometric realization functor will, in some sense, just “erase” words “simplicial” from all our constructions. I.e., “simplicial circle” will become just “circle”, “simplicial Borel construction” will become the classical Borel construction from equivariant cohomology, et.c.

**Example 1.6.6** (Bousfield–Kan construction). Let $F : \mathcal{C} \to \text{Sets}$ be a functor from a small category $\mathcal{C}$ to $\text{Sets}$. Define a new category $\mathcal{C}_F$ as follows. Its objects are $\text{Ob}(\mathcal{C}_F) = \{(c, x) \mid c \in \mathcal{C}, x \in F(c)\}$, and morphisms are given by

$$\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}_F}((c, x), (c', x')) = \{f \in \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}(c, c') \mid F(f) : F(c) \to F(c') \text{ sends } x \mapsto x'\}$$

**Definition 1.6.7.** The homotopy colimit of $F$ is defined by

$$\text{hocolim}(F) := B_\ast \mathcal{C}_F \in \text{sSets}.$$
In particular, if \( F \) is a constant functor, i.e. sending all \( c \in C \) to the same set and any \( f \in \text{Mor}(C) \) to \( \text{id} \), then \( \text{hocolim}(F) \simeq B_*C \).

For example, let's take \( C \) to be simply \( C = \{ * \to * \} \). Then defining \( F \) is equivalent to picking a morphism \( X_0 \to X_1 \) in \( \text{Sets} \). The simplicial set \( \text{hocolim}(F) \) in this case is called the simplicial mapping cylinder.

We will discuss this construction in detail later, see also [BK72].

### 1.7 One example: the nerve of a groupoid

One of the most important examples for us will be the nerves of groupoids. These arise very often in construction of “moduli stacks” of various objects. A particularly important example (and its variations) comes from geometry: it’s the moduli space of principal bundles with connections. Since we will be using this example a lot in the future, let’s recall basic definitions to be precise. For the details of the geometric part of discussion below please see the book [KN96]. For a short review of the theory of connections on principal bundles see Section 1 of Appendix A.

Given a Lie group \( G \), define a category \( \text{Bun}(G) \) as follows. The objects of \( \text{Bun}(G) \) are the triples \((P, M, \theta)\), where \( P \to M \) is a principal bundle, and \( \theta \) is a connection on \( P \). The morphisms \((P', M', \theta') \to (P, M, \theta)\) are given by connection preserving bundle maps, i.e.

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
P' & \xrightarrow{\varphi} & P \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
M' & \xrightarrow{\varphi} & M
\end{array}
\]

such that \( \varphi^* \theta = \theta' \).

Let \( \text{Bun}_n(G) \) be a full subcategory of \( \text{Bun}(G) \) consisting of triples \((P, M, \theta)\) with \( \dim M \leq n \).

**Definition 1.7.1.** An object \( A \in \text{Bun}(G) \) is called \( n \)-classifying if

1. \( A \in \text{Bun}_n(G) \);
2. \( \forall B = (P, M, \theta) \) with \( \dim M \leq n \) there exists a morphism \( \varphi : A \to B \);
3. any two such morphisms \( \varphi \) and \( \varphi' \) are homotopic through bundle maps.

**Theorem 1.7.2** (Narasimhan-Ramanan). For each \( n \) (including \( n = \infty \)) there exists an \( n \)-classifying \( A \in \text{Bun}(G) \).

Fix now a manifold \( M \). Define \( G(M) \) to be the subcategory of \( \text{Bun}(G) \) with triples of the form \((P, M, \theta)\) as objects (\( M \) is fixed), and bundle maps of the form

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
P' & \xrightarrow{\varphi} & P \\
\downarrow_{\pi'} & & \downarrow_{\pi} \\
M & \xrightarrow{\pi} & P
\end{array}
\]
satisfying again $\varphi^*\theta = \theta'$ as morphisms. Notice that $G$-equivariance of $\varphi$ in the diagram (1.5) implies that all such $\phi$ are actually isomorphisms, so $\mathcal{G}(M)$ is a groupoid.

**Definition 1.7.3.** Define $B\nabla G : \textbf{Man}^{op} \to \textbf{sSets}$ sending $M$ to $B_*\mathcal{G}(M)$. This is an example of a “simplicial presheaf on manifolds”.

For more details and applications we refer to [FH13]. We will talk about results of that paper in more detail further in the course.

## 2 Geometric realization

Geometric realization is a natural construction of a topological space from a simplicial set. It is a far reaching generalization of constructing a geometric simplex out of combinatorial data, see Section 1.2. Namely, geometric realization defines a functor $|−| : \textbf{sSets} \to \textbf{Spaces}$. Before giving a precise definition, we should make a few remarks on the category of “spaces”.

### 2.1 General remarks on spaces

In this section we recall a “convenient” category of spaces we will work with. We could just have taken category $\textbf{Top}$ of all topological spaces. But working with this category has certain disadvantages. For example, $\textbf{Top}$ is not Cartesian closed: there is no natural mapping space functor $\text{Hom}(−,−) : \textbf{Top}^{op} \times \textbf{Top} \to \textbf{Top}$ satisfying the adjunction

$$\text{Hom}_{\text{Top}}(Z \times X, Y) \cong \text{Hom}_{\text{Top}}(Z, \text{Hom}(X, Y))$$

In topology, the standard way to remedy this problem is to restrict the category of spaces: instead of working with all topological spaces we restrict to compactly generated weakly Hausdorff spaces (CGWH). We briefly recall below what are compactly generated weakly Hausdorff spaces. For details, see [Ste67] and [Str09].

**Definition 2.1.1.** A topological space $X$ is called compactly generated if for any subset $Z \subseteq X$, $Z$ is closed in $X$ if the set $Z \cap K$ is closed in $K$ for any compact subset $K \subseteq X$.

**Definition 2.1.2.** Topological space $X$ is called weakly Hausdorff if for any compact Hausdorff space $K$ and every continuous map $f : K \to X$ its image $f(K)$ is closed in $X$.

**Remark 2.1.3.** A space $X$ weakly Hausdorff space if and only if the image of the diagonal embedding $\text{diag} : X \to X \times X$ is closed in $X \times X$. This is different from the usual definition of Hausdorff because $X \times X$ denotes the product in the category of CGWH spaces, which is different from the product in $\textbf{Top}$. The underlying set of $X \times X$ is the usual Cartesian product, but the topology is not the product topology. For details see the references above.

**Notation 2.1.4.** We will denoted the full subcategory of $\textbf{Top}$ consisting of CGWH spaces simply by $\textbf{Spaces}$. 

12
It doesn’t matter for us too much what exactly CG and WH mean. What matters are the following two properties which CG and WH guarantee.

First of all, the natural inclusion \( \text{Spaces} \hookrightarrow \text{Top} \) induces an equivalence of homotopy categories \( \text{Ho}(\text{Spaces}) \xrightarrow{\sim} \text{Ho}(\text{Top}) \) (we will give a precise definition of a homotopy category later in the course). The equivalence really means that if we only care about spaces up to homotopy, we might as well just work with \( \text{Spaces} \) without loss of information.

Second, one of the most important classes of spaces, namely the CW complexes, form a subcategory of \( \text{Spaces} \). We assume the reader is familiar with CW complexes, but we still remind basic definitions, mostly to fix notation.

We denote by \( \mathbb{D}^n = \{ x \in \mathbb{R}^n \mid \|x\| \leq 1 \} \) the standard \( n \)-ball, and by \( S^{n-1} = \partial \mathbb{D}^n \) its boundary, the \((n-1)\)-sphere. Notice that \( \mathbb{D}^n \simeq \Delta^n \) and \( S^{n-1} \simeq \partial \Delta^n \) as topological spaces.

For a topological space \( X \) and a map \( f : S^{n-1} \to X \) we define
\[
X \cup_f \mathbb{D}^n = \text{colim} \{ \mathbb{D}^n \leftarrow S^{n-1} \to X \} = X \sqcup \mathbb{D}^n / y \sim f(y), \ y \in \partial \mathbb{D}^n
\]
The space \( X \cup_f \mathbb{D}^n \) is the result of attaching an \( n \)-cell \( e = \text{int}(\mathbb{D}^n) \) (interior of \( \mathbb{D}^n \)) to \( X \) via \( f \). In this situation we call \( f = f_e \) the attaching map corresponding to the cell \( e \).

**Definition 2.1.5.** A topological space \( X \) is a cell complex if

- \( X \) is Hausdorff;
- \( X = \bigsqcup_{i \in I} e_i \), where \( e_i \) are cells with attaching maps \( f_i = f_{e_i} \);
- for all \( i \in I \), \( \text{Im}(f_i) \subseteq \bigsqcup_j e_j \) with \( \dim e_j < \dim e_i \).

**Definition 2.1.6.** A cell complex \( X \) is called a CW complex is

\( (C) \) for any cell \( e \) in \( X \) its closure \( \overline{e} \subseteq X \) is in a finite cell subcomplex of \( X \), i.e. it is a disjoint union of finitely many cells;

\( (W) \) a subset \( U \subseteq X \) is open in \( X \) iff the intersection \( U \cap \overline{e} \) is open in \( \overline{e} \), for all cells \( e \).

If \( X \) is a CW complex, define its skeleton decomposition (filtration)
\[
\text{sk}_0(X) \subseteq \text{sk}_1(X) \subseteq \text{sk}_2(X) \subseteq \cdots \subseteq \text{sk}_n(X) \subseteq \cdots \subseteq X
\]
where \( \text{sk}_i(X) \subseteq X \) is the union of all cells of dimension \( \leq i \).

**Remark 2.1.7.** We will see later that CW complexes have an intrinsic characterization within the category \( \text{Top} \) (equipped with the standard Quillen model structure). Whatever these words mean for now, the main point is that CW complexes play a special role in the category \( \text{Top} \) (or \( \text{Spaces} \)), and this role is similar to the role complexes of finitely generated projective modules play in the category \( \text{Com}(R) \) of all complexes of modules over a ring \( R \). There is a precise meaning of that “similarity of roles” in terms of cofibrations, but for now we leave this remark as it is, as a very informal intuition.
### 2.2 Definition of geometric realization

**Definition 2.2.1.** For a simplicial set $X_s \in \mathbf{sSets}$ we define its geometric realization to be the space

$$|X_s| = \left( \bigsqcup_{n \geq 0} X_n \times \Delta^n \right) / \sim$$

where the equivalence relation is given by $(f^*(x), t) \sim (x, f_s(t))$, $x \in X_n$, $s \in \Delta^m$ for every morphism $f : [m] \to [n]$ in $\Delta$.

More formally, $|X_s|$ can be defined as the coequalizer

$$|X_s| := \text{colim} \left[ \bigsqcup_{f : [n] \to [m]} X_m \times \Delta^n \xrightarrow{f^*} \bigsqcup_{n} X_n \times \Delta^n \right]$$

**Remark 2.2.2.** Since $\Delta$ is generated by morphisms $d^i$, $s^j$, it is enough only to require the identifications $(d^i(x), t) \sim (x, d^i(t))$ and $(s^j(x), t) \sim (x, s^j(t))$ for all $i, j$.

**Remark 2.2.3.** Note also that the set $s^j(x) \times \Delta^{n+1}$ is identified with $\{x\} \times \Delta^n \simeq \Delta^n$, so the degenerate simplices $s^j(x) \in X_{n+1}$ make no contribution to $|X_s|$. This explains why the simplices of the form $s^j(x)$ are called degenerate.

It is obvious that the geometric realization defines a functor $| - | : \mathbf{sSets} \to \mathbf{Top}$. As we will see later, the image of $| - |$ lies in the subcategory $\mathbf{CW} \subset \mathbf{Spaces}$ of CW-complexes.

**Theorem 2.2.4.** The functor $| - |$ is left adjoint to the singular set functor, i.e.

$$| - | : \mathbf{sSets} \rightleftarrows \mathbf{Spaces} : S_s(-)$$

(1.6)

where $S_s(-)$ is defined by $S_n(M) = \text{Hom}_{\mathbf{Top}}(\Delta^n, M)$ (see example 1.3.4).

**Proof.** This will follow from a general adjunction theorem, to be discussed later. □

**Lemma 2.2.5.** Geometric realization of the standard simplicial simplex is the usual standard simplex: $|\Delta[n]_s| = \Delta^n$.

**Proof.** This follows from a more general result of proposition 2.6.1. For the proof of the particular isomorphism $|\Delta[n]_s| = \Delta^n$ see example 2.6.5. □

**Corollary 2.2.6.** If $S^n_s$ is the simplicial sphere, then its geometric realization $|S^n_s|$ is just the usual (topological) $n$-sphere $\mathbb{S}^n$.

**Sketch of proof.** By definition of the simplicial sphere it was defined by the push-out diagram

$$\begin{array}{c}
\partial\Delta[n]_s \\
\downarrow \\
\Delta[n]_s \\
\downarrow \\
S^n_s
\end{array}$$
Push-outs are by definition colimits. Since $\lvert - \rvert$ is left adjoint, it commutes with colimits. Therefore, applying functor $\lvert - \rvert$ to the above push-out diagram, we get another push-out diagram

$$
\begin{array}{c}
\partial \Delta^n \hookrightarrow \Delta^n \\
\downarrow \\
* \rightarrow |S^n|
\end{array}
$$

But it is obvious that the push-out of the resulting diagram is just the $n$-sphere $S^n$. Therefore, $|S^n|$ is isomorphic to $S^n$.

**Theorem 2.2.7.** For any simplicial set $X_*$ its geometric realization $|X_*|$ is a CW complex.

**Proof.** If $X_* \in \textbf{sSets}$, define its $n$-th skeleton by $\text{sk}_n(X_*) = \langle X_k \mid k \leq n \rangle$, the simplicial subset of $X_*$ generated by $X_k$ with $k \leq n$. Then we have skeleton filtration

$$
\text{sk}_0(X_*) \subseteq \text{sk}_1(X_*) \subseteq \cdots \subseteq \text{sk}_n(X_*) \subseteq \cdots \subseteq X_*
$$

and

$$
X_* = \bigcup_{n \geq 0} \text{sk}_n(X_*)
$$

Recall that we defined the boundary of $\Delta[n]_*$ by

$$
\partial \Delta[n]_* = \langle \Delta[n]_k \mid k < n \rangle.
$$

We have coCartesian (push-out) squares

$$
\begin{array}{c}
\bigcup \partial \Delta[n]_* \xrightarrow{\sqcup f_x|\partial \Delta[n]} \text{sk}_{n-1}(X)_* \\
\downarrow \\
\bigcup \Delta[n]_* \xrightarrow{\sqcup f_x} \text{sk}_n(X)_*
\end{array}
$$

where the disjoint unions are taken over all non-degenerate simplices $x \in X_n$, and $f_x$ are the representing maps for such $x \in X_n$, i.e. $f_x : \Delta[n]_* \rightarrow X_*$ is the map corresponding to $x \in X_n$ under the isomorphism (see example 1.3.5)

$$
\text{Hom}_{\textbf{sSets}}(\Delta[n]_*, X) \simeq X_n
$$

By Theorem 2.2.4, the functor $\lvert - \rvert$ commutes with colimits, and hence we get a push-out diagram

$$
\begin{array}{c}
\bigcup \partial \Delta[n]_* \xrightarrow{\sqcup f_x|\partial \Delta[n]} \text{sk}_{n-1}(X)_* \\
\downarrow \\
\bigcup \Delta[n]_* \xrightarrow{\sqcup f_x} \text{sk}_n(X)_*
\end{array}
$$

This last diagram is a push-out diagram, so we construct $|X_*|$ inductively, by attaching cells one by one. Therefore $|X_*|$ is a cell complex. **Check it is actually a CW complex.**
Corollary 2.2.8. The $n$-cells of $|X_*|$ are in one-to-one correspondence with non-degenerate simplices in $X_n$.

2.3 Two generalizations of geometric realization

There are two important generalizations of the geometric realization construction. Let us briefly discuss them here.

Fat realization

Consider the subcategory $\Delta_{\text{inj}}$ of $\Delta$ with $\text{Ob}(\Delta_{\text{inj}}) = \text{Ob}(\Delta)$, and the morphisms of $\Delta_{\text{inj}}$ being the injective morphisms in $\Delta$. It is easy to see that $\Delta_{\text{inj}}$ is generated by the maps $d^i$, so we just “forget” the degeneracy maps $s^j$.

Definition 2.3.1. A pre-simplicial (or semi-simplicial) object in a category $C$ is a functor $\Delta^{op}_{\text{inj}} \to C$.

Notation 2.3.2. We denote the category of pre-simplicial objects in $C$ by $\text{presC}$.

There is an obvious forgetful functor $\text{sSets} \to \text{presSets}$ restricting simplicial sets from $\Delta^{op}$ to $\Delta^{op}_{\text{inj}}$.

Definition 2.3.3. Let $X_*$ be a pre-simplicial set. Its fat realization $\|X_*\|$ is defined by

$$\|X_*\| = \left( \bigsqcup_{n \geq 0} X_n \times \Delta^n \right) / \sim$$

where the equivalence relation is given by $(d_i(x), t) \sim (x, d^i(t))$ for $x \in X_n, t \in \Delta^{n-1}$.

Since the equivalence relation defining the fat realization is weaker than the equivalence relation for the geometric realization, the space $\|X_*\|$ is “bigger” than $|X_*|$ (that’s why $\|X_*\|$ is called “fat”). In fact, $\|X_*\|$ is always infinite-dimensional, even if $X_*$ is the simplicial set consisting of one point in each degree (i.e. when $X_*$ is just the point viewed as a discrete simplicial set). Nevertheless, there is a canonical projection $\|X_*\| \to |X_*|$, which under a suitable condition is a homotopy equivalence.

One advantage of $\|X_*\|$ over $|X_*|$ is that the fat realization of simplicial spaces preserves weak equivalences under much weaker hypotheses. If $f: X_* \to Y_*$ is a level-wise weak equivalence of simplicial spaces which are cofibrant in each dimension, then the induced map $\|X_*\| \to \|Y_*\|$ is a weak equivalence.

For more details and applications to simplicial manifolds, see [Dup01].

Example 2.3.4. Let $X_* = X$ be a discrete simplicial set. Then $\|X\| = X \times \|\ast\| = X \times \bigcup_{n \geq 0} \Delta^n$, while $|X| = X$. 

16
Geometric realization of simplicial spaces

Any set can be viewed as a discrete topological space: this gives a natural inclusion \( \text{Sets} \hookrightarrow \text{Spaces} \) which in turn extends to \( \text{sSets} \hookrightarrow \text{sSpaces} \). We can further extend the functor \( |−| \) to all simplicial spaces \( \text{sSpaces} \) by the same formula as in the Definition 2.2.1.

\[
\text{sSets} \xrightarrow{|−|} \text{Spaces} \\
\downarrow \\
\text{sSpaces}
\]

The difference is that for a simplicial space \( X_* \), the topology on each \( X_n \times \Delta^n \) is the product topology (in the category \( \text{Spaces} \)) coming from both \( X_n \) and \( \Delta^n \), while for a simplicial set \( X_* \), the topology on \( X_n \times \Delta^n = \bigsqcup_{x \in X_n} \Delta^n \) has the union topology coming only from \( \Delta^n \).

Working with simplicial spaces, we have to impose additional conditions to avoid certain pathologies. For example, it may happen that for \( f: X_* \to Y_* \) the map \( f: X_n \to Y_n \) is a weak homotopy equivalence on each level, but the induced map \( |f|: |X_*| \to |Y_*| \) is no longer a homotopy equivalence. There are other pathologies as well. There is a class of “good” spaces (called Reedy cofibrant) for which geometric realization works well. This class was first introduced in [Seg74].

For us it would be enough to know the following two examples of “good” simplicial spaces. First of all, suppose \( X_{**} \) is a bisimplicial set (i.e. a simplicial object in the category \( \text{sSets} \)). Then, for all \( p, q \), the simplicial spaces \( |X_{*q}| \) and \( |X_{pq}| \) are good.

The second example of “good” simplicial spaces is given by the so-called ANR spaces, or absolute neighborhood retracts. By definition, a topological space \( X \) is ANR space if for any continuous map \( f: A \to X \), where \( A \subseteq Y \) is a closed subset of a normal space \( Y \), there is \( Y_0 \) an open neighborhood \( A \subseteq Y_0 \subseteq Y \) of \( A \) such \( f \) extends to a map \( \tilde{f}: Y_0 \to X \).

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
A & \hookrightarrow & Y_0 \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \tilde{f} \\
X & \hookrightarrow & Y
\end{array}
\]

(We remind that a normal space is a space with the property that any two disjoint closed subsets have disjoint open neighborhoods.) Then if each component \( X_n \) as a simplicial space \( X_* \) is an ANR space, then \( X_* \) is good.

**Example 2.3.5.** Any \( C^\infty \)-manifold is an ANR space. This follows from Titze’s Extension theorem. Hence, simplicial \( C^\infty \)-manifolds are good simplicial spaces.

### 2.4 Kan extensions

Consider two functors \( F: C \to E \), \( G: C \to D \). Suppose we would like to find a functor \( S: E \to D \) such that \( F \simeq S \circ G \). In other words, we would like to complete \( F \) and \( G \) to a
In general, this is not possible. For example, if for some morphisms \(f_1, f_2 \in \text{Mor}(\text{C})\) we have \(F(f_1) \neq F(f_2)\) but \(G(f_1) = G(f_2)\), then, of course, the required \(S\) doesn’t exist. So it natural to relax the condition \(F \simeq S \circ G\), and only ask for “best possible approximation” for the commutativity of (1.7). To be precise, we look for universal natural transformations \(F \Rightarrow S \circ G\) (whichever one exists, if any).

We will make things precise in a moment, but first let us fix some notation. If \(\varphi: S \Rightarrow S'\) is a natural transformation between two functors \(S, S': \text{E} \rightarrow \text{D}\), then by \(\varphi \circ G: S \circ G \Rightarrow S' \circ G\) we denote the natural transformation given by

\[
(\varphi \circ G)_X = \varphi_{G(X)}: S(G(X)) \rightarrow S'(G(X))
\]

for all \(X \in \text{Ob}(\text{C})\).

If \(\eta: F \Rightarrow S \circ G\) and \(\varphi: S \Rightarrow S'\) are natural transformations, we get another natural transformation \(\eta': F \Rightarrow S \circ G \Rightarrow S' \circ G\). We say \(\eta'\) is induced from \(\eta\) by \(\varphi\).

**Definition 2.4.1.** A left Kan extension of \(F\) along \(G\) is a functor \(\text{Lan}_G(F): \text{E} \rightarrow \text{D}\) given together with a universal natural transformation \(\eta_{\text{un}}: F \Rightarrow \text{Lan}_G(F) \circ G\) from which any other \(\eta: F \Rightarrow S \circ G\) is induced by a unique \(\varphi: \text{Lan}_G(F) \rightarrow S:\)

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
F & \xrightarrow{\eta} & S \circ G \\
\downarrow \eta_{\text{un}} & & \downarrow \text{Lan}_G(F) \circ G \\
\text{Lan}_G(F) \circ G
\end{array}
\]

If \(\text{Lan}_G(F)\) exists for all possible \(F: \text{C} \rightarrow \text{D}\), then we actually get a pair of adjoint functors

\[
\text{Lan}_G(-): \text{Fun}(\text{C, D}) \rightleftarrows \text{Fun}(\text{E, D}): G_*
\]

where \(G_* = (-) \circ G\). So there is a natural isomorphism

\[
\text{Hom}_{\text{Fun}(\text{E, D})}(\text{Lan}_G(F), S) \simeq \text{Hom}_{\text{Fun}(\text{C, D})}(F, S \circ G)
\]
Dually, one can define a right Kan extension as a functor \( \text{Ran}_G(F) : E \to D \) together with a universal natural transformation \( \varepsilon_{un} : \text{Ran}_G(F) \circ G \Rightarrow F \). Again, if it exists for all \( F \), then one has an adjoint pair

\[
G_* : \text{Fun}(E, D) \xrightarrow{\cong} \text{Fun}(C, D) : \text{Ran}_G(-)
\]

A good picture to keep in mind when thinking about Kan extensions is the following

\[
\text{Fun}(E, D) \xrightarrow{\text{Lan}_G(-)} \text{Fun}(C, D)
\]

\[
\xrightarrow{\text{Ran}_G(-)} \text{Ind}^G_H
\]

\[
\text{Res}^G_H
\]

\[
\text{Coind}^G_H
\]

\[
\text{Res}^G_H \downarrow \downarrow \text{Coind}^G_H
\]

**Example 2.4.2** (Representations of groups). Let \( G \) be a discrete group, and \( G \) is \( G \) viewed as a groupoid with one object \( * \). Then functors \( G \to \text{Vect}_k \) from \( G \) to vector spaces over a field \( k \) are exactly representations of the group \( G \), i.e. \( \text{Fun}(G, \text{Vect}_k) = \text{Rep}_k(G) \).

If \( H \subseteq G \) is a subgroup of \( G \), we have the inclusion \( \iota : H \hookrightarrow G \), which induces the restriction functor \( \text{Res}^G_H : \text{Rep}_k(G) \to \text{Rep}_k(H) \), \( \text{Res}^G_H = \iota_* \). Functor \( \text{Res}^G_H \) sends a \( G \)-module \( V \) to itself but viewed as an \( H \)-module.

In this case, both left and right Kan extensions \( \text{Lan}_\iota(-), \text{Ran}_\iota(-) : \text{Rep}_k(H) \to \text{Rep}_k(G) \) exist. Namely, \( \text{Lan}_\iota = \text{Ind}^G_H \) is the induction functor, sending an \( H \)-module \( V \) to \( G \)-module \( \text{Ind}^G_H(V) := k[G] \otimes_{k[H]} V \). The right Kan extension \( \text{Ran}_\iota = \text{Coind}^G_H \) is the coinduction functor, sending an \( H \)-module \( V \) to \( \text{Coind}^G_H(V) := \text{Hom}_H(k[G], V) \).

**Example 2.4.3** (Geometric realization). Recall from Example 1.3.2 that assigning to \( [n] \in \Delta \) the geometric \( n \)-simplex \( \Delta^n \in \text{Top} \) defines a cosimplicial space \( \Delta^* \in \text{csTop} \). Let \( Y : \Delta \hookrightarrow \text{sSets} \) denote the Yoneda embedding. Then the left Kan extension \( \text{Lan}_Y(\Delta^*) : \text{sSets} \to \text{Top} \) exists, and is given by the geometric realization functor \( |-| : \) :

\[
\Delta^* \xrightarrow{\Delta^* \to \text{Top}} \\
\text{sSets} \xrightarrow{\text{Lan}_Y(\Delta^*) = |-|}
\]

**Example 2.4.4** (Derived functors). Let \( A, B \) be two abelian categories, \( F : A \to B \) an additive functor. \( F \) can be extended term-wise to a functor on the category of complexes \( F : \text{Com}(A) \to \text{Com}(B) \). Denote by \( \text{D}(A) \) and \( \text{D}(B) \) the derived categories of \( A \) and \( B \),

\[
\text{D}(A) \to \text{D}(B)
\]
obtained by localizing \(\text{Com}(A)\) and \(\text{Com}(B)\) on the class of quasi-isomorphisms. Denote by \(\gamma_A\) and \(\gamma_B\) the corresponding localization functors. Then we have the following diagram

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{Com}(A) \xrightarrow{F} \text{Com}(B) \\
\gamma_A \downarrow \downarrow \downarrow \gamma_B \\xrightarrow{D} \\
D(A) \xrightarrow{\text{Def}} D(B)
\end{array}
\]

The total left derived functor \(\mathbb{L}F\) of the functor \(F\) is by definition the right Kan extension \(\text{Ran}_{\gamma_A}(\gamma_B \circ F)\), and the total right derived functor \(\mathbb{R}F\) of \(F\) is the left Kan extension \(\text{Lan}_{\gamma_A}(\gamma_B \circ F)\).

### 2.5 Comma categories

Let \(F: C \to D\) be a functor and \(d \in \text{Ob}(D)\) be a fixed object of \(D\).

**Definition 2.5.1.** The left comma category \(F/d\) is a category having the objects

\[
\text{Ob}(F/d) = \{(c, f) \mid c \in \text{Ob}(C), f \in \text{Hom}_D(F(c), d)\}
\]

and morphisms

\[
\text{Hom}_{F/d}((c, f), (c', f')) = \{h \in \text{Hom}_C(c, c') \mid f' = f' \circ F(h)\}
\]

In other words, the set of morphisms in \(F/d\) from \((c, f)\) to \((c', f')\) consists of all morphisms \(h: c \to c'\) in \(C\) making the following diagram commute:

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
F(c) & \xrightarrow{F(h)} & F(c') \\
\downarrow f & & \downarrow f' \\
d & \xleftarrow{d} & d
\end{array}
\]

We will sometimes denote objects of \(F/d\) by arrows \(F(c) \xrightarrow{f} d\). There exists a natural forgetful functor \(j: F/d \to C\) sending \(j: (c, f) \mapsto c\). Let const\(_d\): \(F/d \to D\) be the constant functor sending every \((c, f) \in \text{Ob}(F/d)\) to \(d \in D\) and any morphism \(h \in \text{Mor}(F/d)\) to \(\text{id}_d\). Then there is a natural transformation \(\eta: F \circ j \Rightarrow \text{const}_d\) given by \(\eta = \{\eta_{(c, f)}: F(c) \xrightarrow{f} d\}\).

A convenient way to organize this data is the following diagram:

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
F/d & \xrightarrow{j} & C \\
\text{const}_d \downarrow & & \downarrow \eta \\
* & \xrightarrow{F} & D
\end{array}
\]

20
Here * denotes the category with one object *, and only one morphism \( \text{id}_* \). We think of the diagram above as a “fibration of categories”. We will make it precise later in the course.

Dually, one defines the right comma category \( d \downarrow F \). Its objects are \( \text{Ob}(d \downarrow F) = \{(c, f) \mid f: d \to F(c)\} \) and morphisms \( \text{Hom}_{d \downarrow F}((c, f), (c', f')) \) are maps \( h: c \to c' \) in \( C \) making the following diagram commute

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
F(c) & \xrightarrow{F(h)} & F(c') \\
f \downarrow & & \downarrow f' \\
d & \xrightarrow{h} & d'
\end{array}
\]

A right comma category \( d \downarrow F \) comes together with a forgetful functor \( j: d \downarrow F \to C \) and a natural transformation \( \eta: \text{const}_d \Rightarrow F \circ j \) which can be organized into the following diagram:

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
d \downarrow F & \xrightarrow{j} & C \\
\downarrow \text{const}_d & & \downarrow F \\
* & \xrightarrow{\eta} & D
\end{array}
\]

The (left) comma categories \( F/\cdot \) can be combined together for different \( d \in \text{Ob}(D) \) to define the global comma category \( F/D \). It’s the category with objects

\[
\text{Ob}(F/D) = \{(c, d, f) \mid c \in \text{Ob}(C), d \in \text{Ob}(D), f: F(c) \to d\}
\]

and morphisms \( \text{Hom}_{F/D}((c, d, f), (c', d', f')) \) being the pairs \( (h, g), h \in \text{Hom}_C(c, c'), g \in \text{Hom}_D(d, d') \) making the following diagram commute

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
F(c) & \xrightarrow{F(h)} & F(c') \\
\downarrow f & & \downarrow f' \\
d & \xrightarrow{h} & d'
\end{array}
\]

There is a forgetful functor \( j: F/D \to C \times D \) defined by \( (c, d, f) \mapsto (c, d) \).

**Example 2.5.2.** Let \( C = D \) and \( F = \text{id}_C \). Then the category \( F/\cdot \) is usually denoted by \( C/\cdot \) and is called the category over \( \cdot \). Similarly, \( d \downarrow F \) is denoted \( d \downarrow C \) and is called the category under \( \cdot \). In this case, the global comma category \( F/C = \text{Mor}(C) \) is just the category of morphisms in \( C \).

**Example 2.5.3** (The simplex category of a small category). Recall (see end of Section 1.5) that to every \( [n] \in \text{Ob}(\Delta) \) we can associate a small category \( \overline{[n]} \). This gives a fully faithful functor from \( \Delta \) to the category of all small categories \( \text{Cats} \):

\[
F: \Delta \hookrightarrow \text{Cats}, \quad F([n]) = \overline{[n]}
\]
**Definition 2.5.4.** For \( C \in \text{Cats} \), we define the simplex category \( \Delta / C \) to be the left comma category \( F / C \).

By definition, the objects of \( \Delta / C \) can be interpreted as elements of the simplicial nerve of \( C \):

\[
\text{Ob}(\Delta / C) = \{ ([n], f) \mid [n] \in \text{Ob}(\Delta), f: [n] \to C \} = \bigcup_{n \geq 0} B_n C
\]

Morphisms \( \text{Mor}(\Delta / C) \) are the morphisms in \( \Delta \) inducing morphisms of diagrams \( [n] \to C \) in \( C \).

### 2.6 Kan extensions using comma categories

Let \( F: C \to D \) and \( G: C \to E \) be two functors. We will give an “explicit” formula for computing the left Kan extension \( \text{Lan}_G(F) \). We will use notation from the sections 2.4 and 2.5.

Fix \( e \in \text{Ob}(E) \), and consider the composition \( \xymatrix{ G/e \ar[r]^j & C \ar[r]^-F & D } \) sending \((c, f) \mapsto F(c)\).

Assuming that the colimit exists \( \text{colim}(F \circ j) \) exists, define

\[
L_G(F)(e) := \text{colim}\{ G/e \xrightarrow{j} C \xrightarrow{F} D \} = \text{colim}(F \circ j)
\]

Note that any morphism \( \varphi: e \to e' \) in \( E \) induces a morphism \( \varphi_*: G/e \to G/e' \) mapping \([G(c) \to e] \mapsto [G(c) \to e' \varphi \to e'] \) for each object \([G(c) \to e] \in \text{Ob}(G/e)\). Hence, we get a morphism of diagrams

\[
\begin{array}{cccc}
G/e & \xrightarrow{j} & C & \xrightarrow{F} & D \\
\varphi_* \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
G/e' & \xrightarrow{j'} & C & \xrightarrow{F} & D
\end{array}
\]

By the universal property of colimits, this induces a unique morphism of colimits \( L_G(F)(e) \to L_G(F)(e') \) (again assuming that \( L_G(F)(e') \) exists) which we call \( L_G(F)(\varphi) \):

\[
\xymatrix{ F \circ j \ar[r]^-{\varphi_*} & F \circ j' \ar[rr] & & \text{colim}(F \circ j') \\
& & \text{colim}(F \circ j) \ar[ru]^-{\exists L_G(F)(\varphi)} &}
\]

**Proposition 2.6.1.** If \( \text{colim}\{ G/e \to C \to D \} \) exists for all \( e \in \text{Ob}(E) \), then there is an isomorphism of functors

\[ L_G(F) \simeq \text{Lan}_G(F) \quad (1.8) \]

**Proof.** It is easy to check that \( L_G(F) \) satisfies the universal property of a left Kan extension. \( \square \)
Remark 2.6.2. The isomorphism (1.8) characterizes the so-called pointwise (left) Kan extensions, i.e. left Kan extensions commuting with corepresentable functors \( h^X = \text{Hom}_D(X, -) \) for all \( X \in \text{Ob}(D) \). If \( D \) has all small limits, then every left Kan extension with codomain \( D \) is automatically pointwise.

Proposition 2.6.1 has two useful consequences.

Corollary 2.6.3. If \( C \) is small and \( D \) is cocomplete (i.e. it has all small colimits) then any functor \( F: C \to D \) has a left Kan extension along any functor \( G \).

Corollary 2.6.4. Assume that the functor \( G \) in Proposition 2.6.1 is fully faithful. Then the universal natural transformation \( \eta_{un}: F \Rightarrow \text{Lan}_G(F) \circ G \) is an isomorphism of functors.

Proof. For every \( c \in \text{Ob}(C) \) consider \( G/Gc \). The fact that \( G \) is fully faithful implies that the category \( G/Gc \) has a terminal object. By definition, the category \( G/Gc \) has objects \( \text{Ob}(G/Gc) = \{(c', f') \mid c' \in \text{Ob}(C), f': G(c') \to G(c)\} \). The claim is that the object \((c, \text{id}_c)\) is the terminal object in \( G/Gc \). Indeed, for any \((c', f') \in \text{Ob}(G/Gc)\), we have

\[
\text{Hom}_{G/Gc}((c', f'), (c, \text{id}_c)) = \{h \in \text{Hom}_C(c', c) \mid f' = \text{id}_c \circ G(h) \equiv G(h)\} = \{G^{-1}(f)\}
\]

Being fully faithful, functor \( G \) induces isomorphisms on all Hom-sets, so the set \( \{G^{-1}(f)\} \) consist of exactly one element. Therefore, \((c, \text{id}_c)\) is indeed the terminal object in \( G/Gc \).

By the universal property of colimits, if a category \( I \) has a terminal object \( \ast \), then for any functor \( F: I \to D \) the colimit \( \text{colim} F \) exists and is naturally isomorphic to \( F(\ast) \).

Thus, in our case, for every \( c \in \text{Ob}(C) \)

\[
\text{Lan}_G(F)c = \text{colim}\{G/G(c) \xrightarrow{\delta} C \xrightarrow{F} D\} \simeq (F \circ j)(c, \text{id}_c) = F(c).
\]

So the natural transformation \( \eta_{un}: F \Rightarrow \text{Lan}_G(F) \circ G \) is naturally isomorphic to \( \text{id}_F \).

Example 2.6.5. Let \( | - |: \text{sSets} \to \text{Spaces} \) be the geometric realization functor, \( Y: \Delta \hookrightarrow \text{sSets} \) the Yoneda embedding, and \( \Delta^*: \Delta \to \text{Spaces} \) the geometric simplex functor, sending \( [n] \) to the geometric \( n \)-simplex simplex \( \Delta^n \). By Example 2.4.3, the functor \( | - | \) is isomorphic to \( \text{Lan}_Y(\Delta^*) \).

Since the Yoneda embedding \( Y \) is a fully faithful functor, we can apply corollary 2.6.4 to it. Therefore, the natural transformation \( \eta_{un}: \Delta^* \Rightarrow | - | \circ Y \) is an isomorphism, and so in particular \( |\Delta[n]| \simeq \Delta^n \). In other words, geometric realization of the standard simplex \( \Delta[n] \) is isomorphic to the geometric simplex \( \Delta^n \).
3 Homotopy theory of categories

3.1 The classifying space of a small category

Definition 3.1.1. The classifying space of a small category $C$ is $BC := |B_* C|$, the geometric realization of the nerve $B_* C$ (see Section 1.5).

Terminology 3.1.2. We say that a category $C$ is connected, contractible, etc. if so is the space $BC$. We say that a functor $F: C \to D$ is a covering, homotopy equivalence, fibration, etc. if the corresponding map of topological spaces $BF: BC \to BD$ is a covering, homotopy equivalence, etc.

The space $BC$ can be characterized uniquely up to homeomorphism by the following axioms.

(BC1) “Naturality:” assignment $C \mapsto BC$ extends to a functor $B: \text{Cats} \to \text{Spaces}$;

(BC2) “Normalization:” The composition of functors

$$B|_F: \Delta \xrightarrow{\sim} \text{Cats} \xrightarrow{B} \text{Spaces}$$

$$[n] \xrightarrow{\sim} [n] \xrightarrow{B[n]}$$

coincides with the geometric simplex functor $\Delta^*$. In other words, $B[n] = \Delta^n$ for each $n \geq 0$ and for each $f \in \text{Hom}_\Delta([n], [m])$ the corresponding map $Bf: \Delta^n \to \Delta^m$ sends the $j$-th vertex of $\Delta^n$ to the $f(j)$-th vertex of $\Delta^m$.

(BC3) “Gluing:” For every (small) category $C \in \text{Cats}$, there is a natural isomorphism

$$BC \simeq \text{colim}_{[n], f} \Delta/C B[n]$$

In other words, $BC$ is obtained as the left Kan extension

$$\Delta \xrightarrow{B|_F} \text{Spaces}$$

$$F \xleftarrow{\sim} \text{Lan}_F(B|_F)$$

$$\text{Cats}$$

Corollary 3.1.3. The classifying space functor $B$ satisfies the following.

(BC4) If $C \subseteq D$ is a subcategory, then $BC \subseteq BD$ is a subcomplex.

(BC5) If $C = \coprod_{\alpha} C_\alpha$ is the disjoint union of categories (coproduct in the category $\text{Cats}$), then $BC = \coprod_{\alpha} BC_\alpha$ of $C$ is the disjoint union of classifying spaces of $C_\alpha$.

(BC6) For any two categories $C, D$ there is an isomorphism $B(C \times D) \simeq BC \times BD$. 24
Remark 3.1.4. Note that $\mathcal{B} \times \mathcal{D}$ is the product in the category $\text{Spaces}$, which is different from the product in the category $\text{Top}$ of all topological spaces (see Remark 2.1.3). However, if either $\mathcal{B}$ or $\mathcal{D}$ is a finite CW complex, the product $\mathcal{B} \times \mathcal{D}$ coincides with the usual product of topological spaces, see [Mil57].

Remark 3.1.5. Informally, $\mathcal{B}$ is built from geometric simplices $\mathcal{B}[n]$ realized as

- $\mathcal{B}[0] \simeq \Delta^0 \simeq \text{pt}$: the objects Ob($\mathcal{C}$);
- $\mathcal{B}[1] \simeq \Delta^1 \simeq [0,1]$ the morphisms $0 \xrightarrow{f} 1$ in Mor($\mathcal{C}$);
- $\mathcal{B}[2] \simeq \Delta^2$ composable pairs

Thus we have an explicit CW decomposition with the set of 0-cells being $\text{sk}_0(\mathcal{B}) = \text{Ob}(\mathcal{C})$, the set of 1-cells

$$\text{sk}_1(\mathcal{B}) = \text{sk}_0(\mathcal{B}) \setminus \text{sk}_0(\mathcal{B}) = \text{Mor}(\mathcal{C}) \setminus \{\text{id}_c | c \in \text{Ob}(\mathcal{C})\},$$

the set of 2-cells $\text{sk}_2(\mathcal{B}) = \text{sk}_0(\mathcal{B}) \setminus \text{sk}_1(\mathcal{B})$ being the set of pairs of composable morphisms $(f_0, f_1)$ excluding pairs of the form $(f_0, \text{id})$ and $(\text{id}, f_1)$, and so on.

Example 3.1.6. Let $\mathcal{C} = \mathbb{Z}/2\mathbb{Z}$ be the category with one object $\ast$ and Mor($\mathcal{C}$) = $\{\text{id}, \sigma\}$, with $\sigma^2 = \text{id}$. Then for each $n \geq 0$ there exist exactly one $n$-cell corresponding to the chain of morphisms $[\ast \xrightarrow{\sigma} \ast \xrightarrow{\sigma} \cdots \xrightarrow{\sigma} \ast]$ of length $n$. Then $\text{sk}_0(\mathcal{B}) = \ast$, $\text{sk}_1(\mathcal{B}) = \mathbb{RP}^1$, etc. The $n$-th skeleton is $\text{sk}_n(\mathcal{B}) = \mathbb{RP}^n$. Therefore, the classifying space is $\mathcal{B} \simeq \mathbb{RP}^\infty$, the infinite real projective space.

25
3.2 Homotopy-theoretic properties of the classifying spaces

Let $F_0, F_1: C \to D$ be two functors between (small) categories.

**Lemma 3.2.1.** A natural transformation $h: F_0 \Rightarrow F_1$ induces a homotopy $BC \times [0,1] \to BD$ between $BF_0$ and $BF_1$.

**Proof.** Define a functor $H: C \times \{0,1\} \to D$ as follows. On objects, $H(c,0) := F_0(c)$ and $H(c',1) := F_1(c')$ for $c,c' \in \text{Ob}(C)$. To define $H$ on morphisms, we first recall that the natural transformation $h$ is given by the family of morphisms $h = \{h_c: F_0(c) \to F_1(c)\}_{c \in \text{Ob}(C)}$ such that for all $f: c \to c'$, $h_{c'} \circ F_0(f) = F_1(f) \circ h_c$. Then given a morphism $(f, 0 \to 1) \in \text{Mor}(C \times \{0,1\})$, $f \in \text{Hom}_C(c,c')$, define $H(f, 0 \to 1) \in \text{Mor}(D)$ to be the morphism $h_{c'} \circ F_0(f) = F_1(f) \circ h_c: F_0(c) \to F_1(c')$.

It is easy to check that this defines a functor $H: C \times \{0,1\} \to D$. Applying the classifying space functor $B$ to $H$ gives $BH: B(C \times \{0,1\}) \to BD$. By Property (BC4), $B(C \times \{0,1\}) \cong BC \times [1] \cong BC \times [0,1]$, and so $BH$ induces a map $BH: BC \times [0,1] \to BD$ satisfying $BH|_{BC \times \{0\}} = BF_0$ and $BH|_{BC \times \{1\}} = BF_1$. Therefore, $BH$ gives a homotopy between $BF_0$ and $BF_1$. 

**Proposition 3.2.2.** Given a pair of adjoint functors

$$L: C \rightleftarrows D: R$$

then $BC$ and $BD$ are homotopy equivalent, with mutually inverse homotopy equivalences given by the maps $BL$ and $BR$.

**Proof.** A pair of adjoint functors $(L, R)$ comes with two natural transformations $\eta: \text{id}_C \Rightarrow RL$ and $\varepsilon: LR \Rightarrow \text{id}_D$, called the unit and counit of the adjunction. Then Lemma 3.2.1 implies

$$B(\text{id}_C) = \text{id}_{BC} \sim BR \circ BL \quad \text{and} \quad BL \circ BR \sim \text{id}_{BD} = B(\text{id}_D),$$

where “$\sim$” denotes homotopy equivalence. 

**Corollary 3.2.3.** If $F: C \to D$ is an equivalence of categories, then $BF: BC \to BD$ is a homotopy equivalence of topological spaces.

**Remark 3.2.4.** In practice, it often happens that a category $C$ is not small, but *skeletally small* (i.e. it is equivalent to a small category $C_0$). The categories $\text{mod}(A)$ of finitely generated modules and $\mathbb{P}(A)$ of finitely generated projective modules over a ring $A$ are two examples of skeletally small categories which are not small.

Then, even though functor $B$ as constructed in Section 3.1 can not be directly applied to such $C$, we can still define $BC$ to be $B(C_0)$. Then Corollary 3.2.3 insures that $BC$ is well defined up to homotopy.
Corollary 3.2.5. If $C$ has initial or terminal object, then $BC$ is contractible.

Proof. If $e \in \text{Ob}(C)$ is initial, consider the constant functor $p: C \to \ast$ from $C$ to the category $\ast$ with one object $\ast$ and one morphism $\text{id}_\ast$. Functor $p$ has a left adjoint functor $i: \ast \hookrightarrow C$ sending $\ast$ to $e$. Proposition 3.2.2 implies that $BC \simeq B\ast \simeq \text{pt}$.

Example 3.2.6. For any category $C$ and $d \in \text{Ob}(C)$, both left and right comma categories $C/d$ and $d\backslash C$ are contractible, because they have terminal object $d/d$ and initial object $d\backslash d$ respectively.

Example 3.2.7. Any additive category $C$ is contractible since by definition, $C$ contains the zero object, which is both initial and terminal in $C$. In particular, the classifying space of the category $\mathcal{P}(A)$ is contractible, $B\mathcal{P}(A) \sim \text{pt}$.

Example 3.2.8. If $(C, \otimes)$ is a symmetric monoidal category, then it often happens that the unit object $I$ is also initial. So in this case once again $BC$ is contractible. Examples of such categories include $\mathcal{P}(A)$ with direct sum $\oplus$ as monoidal structure, or the category $\text{Fin}$ of finite sets with monoidal structure given by the disjoint union $\sqcup$ of sets.

One reason why we distinguish symmetric monoidal categories is that the monoidal structure $\otimes$ induces on the space $BC$ a multiplication $BC \times BC \to BC$, which makes it an $H$-space. For the precise definition of $H$-space and more details on the subject see, for example, [Sta63].

Unfortunately many interesting categories turn out to be contractible, and so not that interesting from the homotopy theory point of view. A standard way to remedy this problem is to replace $C$ by the groupoid $\text{Iso}(C)$ consisting of isomorphisms of $C$. More precisely, $\text{Ob}(\text{Iso}(C)) = \text{Ob}(C)$, and $\text{Mor}(\text{Iso}(C)) = \{\text{isomorphisms in } C\}$. Then by (BC5) we get

$$B\text{Iso}(C) \simeq \bigsqcup_{\text{isoclasses}} B\text{Aut}_C(p),$$

where $p$ denotes a representative of the corresponding isoclass, and $B\text{Aut}_C(p)$ is the classifying space of the group of automorphisms $\text{Aut}_C(p)$ of $p \in \text{Ob}(C)$. In particular, for the skeletally small category $\text{Fin}$ the classifying space of groupoid $\text{Iso}(\text{Fin})$ is

$$B\text{Iso}(\text{Fin}) \simeq \bigsqcup_{n \geq 0} BS_n,$$

with $S_n$ denoting the symmetric group of $n$ elements.

Remark 3.2.9. Note that from axioms (BC1)—(BC3) it follows that $BC \simeq BC^{op}$, but usually there is no functor $C \to C^{op}$ inducing this homeomorphism.
3.3 Connected components

Let $X$ be a CW complex. Denote by $\pi_0(X)$ the set of its connected components. It can also be defined as $\pi_0(X) = sk_0(X)/\sim$, where two 0-cells $x_0, x_1$ are equivalent, $x_0 \sim x_1$, if and only if there is a 1-cell $e$ adjacent to both $x_0$ and $x_1$. This motivates the following definition and implies the following lemma.

**Definition 3.3.1.** For a (small) category $C$, define $\pi_0(C) := \pi_0(BC)$.

**Lemma 3.3.2.** Let “$\sim$” be the equivalence relation on $\text{Ob}(C)$ generated by $c \sim c'$ iff $\exists f: c \to c'$ or $\exists f: c' \to c$. Then $\pi_0(C) \simeq \text{Ob}(C)/\sim$.

**Example 3.3.3.** Let $G$ be a discrete group, and $X$ a (left) $G$-set. Consider the action groupoid $G \times X$ (cf. Example 1.6.4). Then $\pi_0(G \times X) = X/G$ is the set of $G$-orbits in $X$.

Note that a $G$-set $X$ can be viewed as a functor $G \to \text{Sets}$ sending $\ast \mapsto X$. This example motivates the following construction due to Grothendieck.

**Example 3.3.4 (Translation category).** Let $X: C \to \text{Sets}$ be a functor from a small category $C$ to $\text{Sets}$. Define the translation category $C \ltimes X$ as a category with $\text{Ob}(C \ltimes X) = \{(i, x) \mid i \in C, x \in X(i)\}$, and morphisms defined by

$$\text{Hom}_{C \ltimes X}((i, x), (i', x')) = \{f \in \text{Hom}_C(i, i') \mid X(f)x = x'\}.$$

**Lemma 3.3.5.**

$$\pi_0(C \ltimes X) \simeq \text{colim}(X)$$

*Proof.* Indeed, for each $i \in \text{Ob}(C)$ denote the universal maps $X(i) \to \text{colim}(X)$ by $\varphi_i$. Define $\varphi: \text{Ob}(C \ltimes X) \to \text{colim}(X)$ by $(i, x) \mapsto \varphi_i(x)$. If $(i, x_i) \sim (j, x_j)$ then by definition of the equivalence relation $\exists f_{ij}: i \to j$ (or $j \to i$) s.t. $X(f_{ij})x_i = x_j$, and so there is $X(f_{ij}): X(i) \to X(j)$ (or $X(j) \to X(i)$). By definition of the universal maps $\varphi_i, \varphi_j(x_j) = \varphi_i(x_i)$. Hence, by Lemma 3.3.2 we get a well-defined map $\pi_0(C \ltimes X) \to \text{colim}(X)$. The inverse map $\text{colim}(X) \to \pi_0(C \ltimes X)$ is induced by the universal property of colim. $\square$

3.4 Coverings of categories

For a short review of the theory of coverings of topological spaces, as well as for notations, see Section 2 of Appendix A.

Let $C$ be a small category, and let $p: E \to BC$ be a covering of $BC$. Define the fiber transition functor $E: C \to \text{Sets}$ as follows. Any object $c \in \text{Ob}(C)$ gives a 0-cell in $BC$, so we define $E(c) := E_c := p^{-1}(c)$. Ant morphism $f: c \to c'$ in $C$ gives an element of $B_1C$. By Lemma 1.3.6, $B_1C$ is naturally isomorphic to $\text{Hom}_{\text{Sets}}(\Delta[1], B_1C)$. Thus the morphism $f: c \to c'$ corresponds to a morphism of simplicial sets $f: \Delta[1], \to B_1C$. Applying the geometric realization functor $|-|$, one gets then a map of spaces $|f|: \Delta^1 \to BC$, i.e. a path in $BC$. This allows us to define the functor $E$ on morphisms. Namely, for a morphism $f: c \to c'$ the map $E(f): E_c \to E_{c'}$ is sending a point $e \in E_c$ to the target $e' = f(e) \in E_{c'}$.
of the unique lifting \( \tilde{f}: \Delta^1 \to E \) of the path \( f \) satisfying \( \tilde{f}(0) = e \) (cf. Theorem 2.0.3 in Appendix A).

The functor \( E: C \to \text{Sets} \) we have defined is actually \( \text{morphism-invertible} \), i.e. it maps all morphisms in \( C \) into isomorphisms in \( \text{Sets} \).

Conversely, given a functor \( X: C \to \text{Sets} \), consider the translation category \( C \ltimes X \) (see Example 3.3.4). This category is equipped with the forgetful functor \( F: C \ltimes X \to C \) sending \((c,x) \mapsto c\). Applying the classifying space functor \( B \), we obtain a map of spaces

\[ BF: B(C \ltimes X) \to BC. \]

**Lemma 3.4.1.** If a functor \( X: C \to \text{Sets} \) is morphism-inverting, then \( BF: B(C \ltimes X) \to BC \) is a covering of \( BC \).

These two constructions are inverse to each other, and

\[ \text{Cov}(B) \xrightarrow{\simeq} \text{Fun}^{\text{inv}}(C, \text{Sets}) \]

is an equivalence of categories \( \text{Cov}(B) \) of coverings of \( BC \) and the category \( \text{Fun}^{\text{inv}}(C, \text{Sets}) \) of morphism-inverting functors (see Theorem 2.0.7 in Appendix A).

**Definition 3.4.2.** The fundamental groupoid \( \Pi(C) \) of a category \( C \) is the localization

\[ \Pi(C) := C[\text{Mor}(C)^{-1}] \]

of \( C \) along all morphisms \( \text{Mor}(C) \).

**Theorem 3.4.3.** The localization functor \( \gamma: C \to \Pi(C) \) induces a natural isomorphism of categories

\[ \text{Fun}(\Pi(C), \text{Sets}) \xrightarrow{\simeq} \text{Fun}^{\text{inv}}(C, \text{Sets}) \simeq \text{Cov}(C) \]

**Remark 3.4.4.** In Example 1.6.6 to every functor \( F: C \to \text{Sets} \) we associated a simplicial set \( \text{hocolim}(F) \) which we called Bousfield-Kan construction, or a homotopy colimit. Comparing the two definitions, we see that \(|\text{hocolim}(F)| = B(C \ltimes F)|\). In other words, coverings are geometric realizations of homotopy colimits of fiber functors.

In many cases, covering of a particular category \( C \) can be described explicitly.

**Example 3.4.5** (Discrete groupoids). For the details of this example see P.May’s book \([May99, \text{Chapter 2}]\).

Let \( C \) be a small connected groupoid. In this case, a covering of \( C \) is a functor \( p: E \to C \), where \( E \) is also a small connected groupoid, and the functor \( p \) should satisfy the following two conditions:

1. “surjectivity:” the map \( \text{Ob}(E) \to \text{Ob}(C) \) is surjective;
2. “local triviality:” for every \( e \in \text{Ob}(E) \) the map \( p|_{\text{St}(e)}: \text{St}(e) \xrightarrow{\simeq} \text{St}(p(e)) \) is a bijection.

Here \( \text{St}(e) \) is by definition the set of objects \( \text{Ob}(e \setminus E) \).
Note that \( p^{-1}(\text{St}(c)) = \bigsqcup_{e \in E_c} \text{St}(e) \), where \( E_c \) denotes the set \( E_c = p^{-1}(c) \subset \text{Ob}(E) \).

The corresponding translation functor \( E: C \to \text{Sets} \) is defined by \( c \mapsto E_c = p^{-1}(c) \) on objects \( c \in \text{Ob}(C) \). On morphisms, for any \( f: c \to c' \) the corresponding morphism \( E(f): E_c \to E_{c'} \) is given by

\[
e \mapsto e' := \text{target of } (p|_{\text{St}(e)})^{-1}(f)
\]

**Theorem 3.4.6.** If \( p: E \to B \) is a covering of spaces, then \( \Pi(p): \Pi(E) \to \Pi(B) \) is a covering of groupoids in the above sense. In fact, the functor \( \Pi(-) \) is an equivalence of categories

\[
\Pi: \text{Cov}(B) \xrightarrow{\sim} \text{Cov}(\Pi(B))
\]

### 3.5 Explicit presentations of fundamental groups of categories

Let \( C \) be a small category, and \( c \in \text{Ob}(C) \) be a fixed object.

**Definition 3.5.1.** The fundamental group \( \pi_1(C, c) \) is the group

\[
\pi_1(C, c) := \pi_1(BC, c) \simeq \text{Aut}_{\Pi(C)}(c).
\]

For a subset \( T \subset \text{Mor}(C) \) of morphisms of \( C \), define its graph to be the 1-dimensional CW-subcomplex of \( BC \) with edges being (non-identity) morphisms in \( T \), and vertices being all sources and targets of morphisms from \( T \). We call the set of morphisms \( T \) a tree if its graph is contractible. If \( C \) is connected, we can choose a maximal tree \( T \) which has all objects of \( C \) as its vertices (the existence of such a maximal tree is an easy application of Zorn’s lemma).

**Proposition 3.5.2.** Let \( C \) be a small connected category, and \( T \) a maximal tree in \( \text{Mor}(C) \). Fix an object \( c_0 \in \text{Ob}(C) \). Then \( \pi_1(C, c_0) \) has the following presentation:

\[
\pi_1(C, c_0) \simeq \langle \overline{f} \mid f \in \text{Mor}(C) \rangle / R
\]

where \( R \) is the normal subgroup of the free group \( \langle \overline{f} \mid f \in \text{Mor}(C) \rangle \), generated by relations

- \( \overline{f} = 1 \) if either \( f = \text{id}_c \) for some \( c \in \text{Ob}(C) \) or \( f \in T \);

- \( \overline{f} \cdot \overline{g} = \overline{f \circ g} \) for all composable morphisms \( f, g \in \text{Mor}(C) \).

**Sketch.** Let \( f: c_1 \to c_2 \) be a morphism in \( C \). We can assume it’s not id and it doesn’t belong to the tree \( T \). Since the tree \( T \) is maximal, there exist unique (non-oriented) paths \( \gamma_1 \) from \( c_0 \) to \( c_1 \) and \( \gamma'_2 \) from \( c_2 \) to \( c_0 \) inside the tree \( T \). Together with \( f \), these two paths give a loop in \( BC \) based at the point \( c_0 \) by first going along \( \gamma_1 \), then along \( f \) and finally along \( \gamma'_2 \).

Denote the resulting loop by \( \gamma_f \). This allows us to define a homomorphism

\[
\langle \overline{f} \mid f \in \text{Mor}(C) \rangle \to \pi_1(C, c_0)
\]

sending \( \overline{f} \) to the homotopy class \( [\gamma_f] \) of the loop \( \gamma_f \). This homomorphism induces the required isomorphism \( \langle \overline{f} \mid f \in \text{Mor}(C) \rangle / R \simeq \pi_1(C, c_0) \). \( \square \)
Example 3.5.3. Let \( G \) be a discrete group, and let \( \mathcal{C} = \mathcal{G} \) be the corresponding groupoid with one object. Proposition 3.5.2 implies that the tree \( T = \ast \) is the trivial tree, and \( \pi_1(BG) \simeq G \). In fact, we will see later that higher homotopy groups vanish, i.e. \( \pi_i(BG) = 0 \), \( \forall i \geq 2 \). Thus \( BG = K(G, 1) \) is the Eilenberg-Maclane space, see [May99, Chapter 4].

3.6 Homology of small categories

Motivation

If \( G \) is a discrete group, we can define its homology (and similarly cohomology) as the homology of Eilenberg-Maclane complex \( C_\bullet(G) \) with \( C_n(G) = \mathbb{Z}[G]^\otimes n \) and the differential \( \partial: C_n(G) \to C_{n-1}(G) \) given by

\[
\partial(g_0, \ldots, g_n) = (g_1, \ldots, g_n) + \sum_{i=0}^{n-1} (-1)^{i+1}(g_0, \ldots, g_i g_{i+1}, \ldots, g_n) + (-1)^{n+1}(g_0, \ldots, g_{n-1})
\]

Then the homology of \( G \) is defined by \( H_\bullet(G) := H_\bullet([C(G)] \). Notice that as an abelian group, \( C_n(G) \simeq \mathbb{Z}[B_n G] \) is the free group generated by the \( n \)-simplices of the nerve \( B_n G \) of the group \( G \) (see Example 1.6.2), and moreover, the differential \( \partial \) on \( C_\bullet(G) \) is exactly the alternating sum \( \partial = \sum_i (-1)^i d_i \) of the face maps of simplicial set \( B_n G \). Thus, the complex \( C_\bullet(G) \) is isomorphic to the standard cellular complex \( C_\bullet(BG) \) of the CW complex \( BG \). Therefore, there is a natural isomorphism

\[
H_\bullet(G) \simeq H_\bullet(BG, \mathbb{Z}).
\]

Homology of a category

We now generalize this to an arbitrary category.

Definition 3.6.1. For a small category \( \mathcal{C} \) define the complex \( C_\bullet(\mathcal{C}) \) to have \( n \)-th component \( C_n(\mathcal{C}) = \mathbb{Z}[\mathcal{B}_n \mathcal{C}] \) and differential \( \partial: C_n(\mathcal{C}) \to C_{n-1}(\mathcal{C}) \) given by

\[
\partial = \sum_{i=0}^{n} (-1)^i d_i
\]

where the maps \( d_i \) are the face maps of the simplicial set \( \mathcal{B}_n \mathcal{C} \) (see Section 1.5).

Then the homology groups of \( \mathcal{C} \) are defined as the homology groups of the complex \( C_\bullet(\mathcal{C}) \), i.e.

\[
H_\bullet(\mathcal{C}) := H_\bullet(C(\mathcal{C})) \simeq H_\bullet(\mathcal{B}\mathcal{C}, \mathbb{Z})
\]

An important consequence of Theorem 3.4.3 is the following.

Corollary 3.6.2. Local systems (see [BMP14, Sec. 7, Ch.1]) on \( \mathcal{B}\mathcal{C} \) are in one-to-one correspondence with morphisms-inverting functors \( A: \mathcal{C} \to \text{Ab} \), i.e. with functors \( \Pi(\mathcal{C}) \to \text{Ab} \) from the fundamental groupoid of \( \mathcal{C} \).
In the case of a group $G$, coefficients are $G$-modules, which are just functors $G \to \text{Ab}$.

This allows to introduce homology of $C$ with coefficients in a local system. Namely, let $A: C \to \text{Ab}$ be a morphism-inverting functor. Define the complex $C_\bullet(C, A)$ as follows, where $\coprod$ denotes the coproduct in the category $\text{Ab}$, i.e. $\coprod$ is the direct sum $\oplus$ of abelian groups.

\[
C_0(C, A) = \coprod_{c \in \text{Ob}(C)} A(c)
\]
\[
C_1(C, A) = \coprod_{f: c_0 \to c_1} A(c_0)
\]
\[
C_n(C, A) = \coprod_{c_0 \to \cdots \to c_n} A(c_0)
\]

The differential on $C_\bullet(C, A)$ is given by

\[
\partial^A_n = \sum_{i=0}^{n} (-1)^i A(d_i) : C_n(C, A) \to C_{n-1}(C, A)
\]

For example, $\partial^A_1: \coprod_{c: c_0 \to c_1} A(c_0) \to \coprod c A(c)$ restricted to the component indexed by $f: c_0 \to c_1$ is given by the map

\[
\partial^A_1|f: c_0 \to c_1 : A(c_0) \to A(c_0) \oplus A(c_1)
\]

sending $x \mapsto (x, A(f)x)$. So $H_0(C, A) = \text{Coker}(\partial^A_1)$.

**Lemma 3.6.3.** For any local system $A: C \to \text{Ab}$ there is a natural isomorphism $H_0(C, A) \simeq \text{colim}(A)$.

**Proof.** Consider the translation category $C \ltimes A$ associated to $A$ (see Example 3.3.4). Then

\[
\pi_0(C \ltimes A) = \text{Ob}(C \ltimes A) / \sim = \coprod_{c \in \text{Ob}(C)} A(c) / \sim
\]

where

\[
(c_0, x) \sim (c_1, x') \iff \exists f: c_0 \to c_1 \text{ s.t. } A(f)x = x' \\
\iff \exists f: c_0 \to c_1 \text{ s.t. } A(f)x - x' = 0
\]

Thus $\pi_0(C \ltimes A) = \coprod_{c \in \text{Ob}(A)} A(c) / \langle x, A(f)x | x \in A(c_0), f: c_0 \to c_1 \rangle = \text{Coker}(\partial^A_1)$. The only thing left is to use Lemma 3.3.5 saying $\pi_0(C \ltimes A) \simeq \text{colim}(A)$. \qed
Since \( \textbf{Ab} \) is an abelian category, the category \( \text{Fun}(\mathbf{C}, \textbf{Ab}) \) is also abelian, having enough projectives and injectives since \( \textbf{Ab} \) does. So \( \text{colim}: \text{Fun}(\mathbf{C}, \textbf{Ab}) \to \textbf{Ab} \) is an additive right exact functor. Therefore it has (classical) left derived functors \( \text{colim}_n := \mathbb{L}_n \text{colim} \).

**Theorem 3.6.4** (Quillen). For any \( A: \mathbf{C} \to \textbf{Ab} \), there is an isomorphism

\[
H_n(\mathbf{C}, A) \simeq \text{colim}_n(A), \quad \forall n \geq 0
\]

**Sketch of proof.** The theorem follows from Grothendieck’s \( \delta \)-functor criterion (see [BMP14, Section 3.4]). Namely, one checks that the sequence of functors \( \{ A \mapsto H_n(\mathbf{C}, A) \}_{n \geq 0} \) is an exact \( \delta \)-functor which is effaceable in degree \( p > 0 \). The sequence of derived functors \( \{ \text{colim}_n \}_{n \geq 0} \) satisfies these properties automatically. Since we have a functorial in \( A \) isomorphism

\[
H_0(\mathbf{C}, A) \simeq \text{colim}_0(A),
\]
the universal property of \( \delta \)-functors implies isomorphisms

\[
H_n(\mathbf{C}, A) \simeq \text{colim}_n(A),
\]
for all \( n \geq 0 \). \( \square \)

**Theorem 3.6.5** (Quillen). For any \( A: \mathbf{C} \to \textbf{Ab} \), denote by \( A \) the corresponding local system on \( \mathcal{B} \mathbf{C} \) (see Corollary 3.6.2). Then there is a natural isomorphism

\[
H_\bullet(\mathcal{B} \mathbf{C}, A) \simeq H_\bullet(\mathbf{C}, A)
\]

**Sketch of proof.** Filter the CW complex \( \mathcal{B} \mathbf{C} \) by its skeleta:

\[
\text{sk}_0(\mathcal{B} \mathbf{C}) \subseteq \text{sk}_1(\mathcal{B} \mathbf{C}) \subseteq \text{sk}_2(\mathcal{B} \mathbf{C}) \subseteq \ldots
\]

This filtration induces a filtration

\[
C_\bullet(\text{sk}_0(\mathcal{B} \mathbf{C})) \subseteq C_\bullet(\text{sk}_1(\mathcal{B} \mathbf{C})) \subseteq \ldots
\]
on the cellular complex \( C_\bullet(\mathcal{B} \mathbf{C}, A) \). The associated spectral sequence \( (E^r_{pq}, d^r) \) with

\[
E^1_{pq} = H_{p+q}[C_\bullet(\text{sk}_p(\mathcal{B} \mathbf{C})) / C_\bullet(\text{sk}_{p-1}(\mathcal{B} \mathbf{C}))] \simeq H_{p+q}[C_\bullet(\text{sk}_p / \text{sk}_{p-1})]
\]
converging to \( H_{p+q}(\mathbf{C}, A) \) has \( E^1_{pq} = 0 \) if \( q \neq 0 \). Indeed, the quotient \( \text{sk}_p / \text{sk}_{p-1} \) is homeomorphic to a bouquet of \( p \)-spheres \( \mathbb{S}^p \) indexed by the \( p \)-cells of \( \mathcal{B} \mathbf{C} \), and so \( H_{p+q}(\text{sk}_p / \text{sk}_{p-1}) \) vanishes for \( q \geq 1 \). Therefore, the spectral sequence degenerates at the first page, i.e. \( E^1 = E^\infty \). The complex \( E^\infty \) is the (normalized) chain complex \( C_\bullet(\mathbf{C}, A) \). Hence the spectral sequence degenerating on the first page gives the desired isomorphism. \( \square \)
### 3.7 Quillen’s Theorem A

Let $F: C \to D$ be a functor between two categories, and let $BF: BC \to BD$ be the induced map of classifying spaces. Let’s recall (see Section 2.5) that left and right comma categories $F/d$ and $d\backslash F$ come equipped with forgetful functors to $C$, and also with a natural transformations $F \circ j \Rightarrow \text{const}_d$ and $\text{const}_d \Rightarrow F \circ j$ respectively. This data fits into two dual commutative diagrams

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
F/d & \xrightarrow{j} & C \\
\downarrow \text{const}_d & & \downarrow \eta \\
\star & \xrightarrow{\eta} & D
\end{array}
\quad \quad
\begin{array}{ccc}
d\backslash F & \xrightarrow{j} & C \\
\downarrow \text{const}_d & & \downarrow \eta \\
\star & \xrightarrow{\eta} & D
\end{array}
$$

Applying the classifying space functor $B$ to these diagrams gives two sequences

$$
B(d\backslash F) \xrightarrow{Bj} BC \xrightarrow{f} BD
$$

$$
B(F/d) \xrightarrow{Bj} BC \xrightarrow{f} BD
$$

where we denoted $f = BF$. Because the compositions are constant, we have natural maps to the homotopy fiber (see diagram (A.4))

$$
B(d\backslash F) \to Ff \leftarrow B(F/d)
$$

**Theorem 3.7.1 (Quillen’s Theorem A).** If $F: C \to D$ is a functor such that every comma category $d\backslash F$ is contractible for every $d \in D$. Then $BF: BC \to BD$ is a homotopy equivalence.

**Remark 3.7.2.** Since $BD \simeq BD^{op}$, in Theorem 3.7.1 the assumption of right comma categories $d\backslash F$ being contractible can be replaced with the assumption that left comma categories $F/d$ are contractible, and the theorem will still be true.

**Example 3.7.3.** Let’s assume that $F: C \to D$ has a left adjoint functor $L: D \to C$. Then $L$ induces for every $d \in D$ an equivalence of categories $d\backslash F \xrightarrow{\sim} L(d)\backslash C$. Indeed, unit and counit of adjunction, $\eta: \text{id}_D \Rightarrow FL$ and $\epsilon: LF \Rightarrow \text{id}_C$, induce the isomorphisms $FLF \xrightarrow{F\eta L} F$ and $LFL \xrightarrow{\eta L} L$. Then the functors $d\backslash F \to L(d)\backslash C$ sending $[d \to Fc] \mapsto [Ld \to LFc]$ and $L(d)\backslash C \to d\backslash F$ sending $[Ld \to c] \mapsto [FLd \to Fc]$ are mutually inverse, giving the required equivalence of categories.

Since $L(d)\backslash C$ has initial object, it is contractible (see Corollary 3.2.5), and so Theorem 3.7.1 implies that $BF: BC \xrightarrow{\sim} BD$. We have already proved that adjunctions between functors induce homotopy equivalences of the classifying spaces, see Proposition 3.2.2. So Quillen’s theorem A agrees with this result.
Example 3.7.4. Let $i: \mathbb{N} \hookrightarrow \mathbb{Z}$ be the inclusion of $\mathbb{N}$ into $\mathbb{Z}$ viewed as an inclusion of categories with one object $\ast$. We leave it as an exercise to check that $\ast \setminus i$ is contractible. So there is a homotopy equivalence

$$B\mathbb{N} \simeq B\mathbb{Z} \simeq S^1$$

Let $X_{\ast\ast} = \{X_{pq}\}$ be a bisimplicial set. We denote horizontal face and degeneracy maps by $d^h_i, s^h_j$, and vertical — by $d^v_i, s^v_j$.

Definition 3.7.5. The geometric realization of a bisimplicial set $X_{\ast\ast}$ is

$$BX = \bigsqcup_{p,q \geq 0} X_{pq} \times \Delta^p \times \Delta^q \sim$$

where the equivalence relation $\sim$ is given by the same formulas as in Definition 2.2.1 of the geometric realization of a simplicial set, but separate relations for horizontal and vertical directions.

There exists a diagonalization functor $\text{ssSets}^{\text{diag}} \to \text{sSets}$ from bisimplicial sets to simplicial sets, sending a bisimplicial set $\{X_{pq}\}$ to the simplicial set $\{X_{nn}\}$ with face maps $d_i = d^h_i \circ d^v_i = d^v_i \circ d^h_i$ and degeneracy maps $s_j = s^h_j \circ s^v_j = s^v_j \circ s^h_j$.

Lemma 3.7.6. For any bisimplicial set $X = \{X_{pq}\}$ the functor $\text{diag}$ induces a homotopy equivalence

$$BX \xrightarrow{\sim} B\text{diag}(X)$$

Let $f = f_{\ast\ast}: X_{\ast\ast} \to Y_{\ast\ast}$ be a map of bisimplicial sets. Every object $c \in \text{Ob}(C) = B_0 C \simeq \text{Hom}_{\text{sSets}}(\Delta[0], B_\ast C)$ gives an element $s^p_0(c) \in B_p C$ for $p \geq 0$. Define the fiber of $f$ to be the bisimplicial subset $f^{-1}(c) \subseteq X_{\ast\ast}$ given by

$$f^{-1}(c) = \{f^{-1}_{pq}(s^p_0(c)) \subseteq X_{pq}\}$$

Any morphism $\alpha: c \to c'$ yields a map of bisimplicial sets $f^{-1}(c) \xrightarrow{\alpha}$.  

Lemma 3.7.7. Let $f: X_{\ast\ast} \to Y_{\ast\ast}$ be as above.

1. If for every $p \geq 0$ the maps $f_{ps}: X_{ps} \to Y_{ps}$ are homotopy equivalences, then $Bf: BX \to BY$ is a homotopy equivalence.

2. If for every morphism $\alpha: c \to c'$ in $C$ the associated map $Bf^{-1}(c) \to Bf^{-1}(c')$ is a homotopy equivalence, then for every $c \in \text{Ob}(C)$ the inclusion $f^{-1}(c) \hookrightarrow X_{\ast\ast}$ fits into a homotopy fibration sequence (see Definition 3.0.10)

$$Bf^{-1}(c) \to BX \to BC$$

Proposition 3.7.8 (Quillen’s lemma). For any functor $F: C \to D$, the canonical forgetful functor $j: D \setminus F \to C$ from the global right comma category is a homotopy equivalence.
Proof. Recall (see Section 2.5) that $D/F$ has objects

$$\text{Ob}(D/F) = \{(c, d, f) \mid c \in \text{Ob}(C), d \in \text{Ob}(D), \quad d \xrightarrow{f} F(c)\}$$

and morphisms being pairs $(\varphi, \psi)$, $\varphi : c \to c'$ and $\psi : d \to d'$ making the obvious diagram commute.

Let $X = \{X_{pq}\}$ be a bisimplicial set defined by

$$X = \{d_p \to \cdots \to d_0 \to F(c_0), \quad c_0 \to \cdots \to c_p\}_{p,q}$$

with horizontal and vertical face and degeneracy maps coming from the nerves $B_* C$ and $B_* D$, respectively.

Note that $B_*(D/F) = \text{diag}(X)$, and therefore $B(D/F)$ is homotopy equivalent to $BX$ by Lemma 3.7.6.

Consider the natural projection $f : X_{**} \to B_* C$. Then the fiber $f^{-1}(c_0)$ has elements

$$\{d_q \to \cdots \to d_0 \to F(c_0)\} = d_q \to \cdots \to d_0 = B_q(D/F(c_0))$$

For the first equality, we downwards arrow in the left hand side are just compositions of the corresponding arrows in $\{d_q \to \cdots \to d_0 \to F(c_0)\}$. So $f^{-1}(c_0) \simeq B_*(D/F(c_0))$. Since the category $D/F(c_0)$ has a terminal object, the corresponding space $B(D/F(c_0))$ is contractible for any $c_0$. By Lemma 3.7.7 we conclude that $Bf : BX \to BC$ is a homotopy equivalence.

Combining this with the homotopy equivalence $B(D/F) \simeq BX$ obtained above, we get $B(D/F) \simeq BC$. \hfill $\Box$

We are now ready to prove Theorem 3.7.1.

Proof of Quillen’s theorem A. Consider the category $D/F$ together with two forgetful functors

$$C \xleftarrow{j_C} D/F \xrightarrow{j_D} D^\text{op}$$

where $j_C : (c, d, f) \mapsto c$ and $j_D : (c, d, f) \mapsto d$. By Quillen’s lemma 3.7.8, functor $j_C$ is a homotopy equivalence. Consider the following commutative diagram

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
C & \xleftarrow{\sim} & D/F & \xrightarrow{} & D^\text{op} \\
F \downarrow & & \downarrow j_{\text{Mor}} & & \\
D & \xleftarrow{\sim} & \text{Mor}(D) & \xrightarrow{} & D^\text{op}
\end{array}
$$

(1.10)

In the diagram (1.10) above, $\text{Mor}(D)$ denotes the set of morphisms $\text{Mor}(D)$, but viewed as a category. The functors $t : \text{Mor}(D) \to D$ and $s : \text{Mor}(D) \to D^\text{op}$ are the projection functors $[d \to d'] \mapsto d'$ and $[d \to d'] \mapsto d$ respectively. The functor $j_{\text{Mor}} : D/F \to \text{Mor}(D)$ is the projection functor $(c, d, f) \mapsto f$. 

36
Note that \( \text{Mor}(D) = D \setminus \text{id}_D \). Thus, by Quillen’s lemma functors \( s, t \) are homotopy equivalences. Therefore it suffices to prove that \( B(D \setminus F) \xrightarrow{\simeq} BD^{\text{op}} \) is a homotopy equivalence.

The last map factors as \( B(D \setminus F) \xrightarrow{\simeq} BX \xrightarrow{\pi} BD^{\text{op}} \), where \( X \) is the bisimplicial set defined by the formula (1.9) in the proof of Quillen’s lemma. The map \( \pi: BX \to BD^{\text{op}} \) is defined by the formula

\[
\pi: \{d_q \to \cdots \to d_0 \to F(c_0), c_0 \to \cdots \to c_p\} \mapsto \{d_q \to \cdots \to d_0\}
\]

As in the proof of Quillen’s lemma, the fiber \( \pi^{-1}(d_0) \simeq B_s(d_0 \setminus F) \), and the latter simplicial set is contractible by the assumption. Therefore, Lemma 3.7.7 implies that \( B\pi \) is a homotopy equivalence. Thus, \( B(D \setminus F) \xrightarrow{\simeq} BX \xrightarrow{\pi} BD^{\text{op}} \) is also a homotopy equivalence, and so from the diagram (1.10) we conclude that \( BF \) is also a homotopy equivalence. \( \square \)

We refer the reader to the original paper [Qui73] by D. Quillen for all the details.

### 3.8 Fibred and cofibred functors

For the materials in the section please see [SGA03, Exposé VI].

Let \( F: C \to D \) be a functor, and let \( d \in \text{Ob}(D) \) be a fixed object.

**Definition 3.8.1.** The fibre of \( F \) over \( d \) is the category \( F^{-1}(d) \) defined by

\[
\text{Ob}(F^{-1}(d)) = \{c \in \text{Ob}(C) \mid F(c) = d\}
\]

\[
\text{Mor}(F^{-1}(d)) = \{f \in \text{Mor}(C) \mid F(f) = \text{id}_d\}
\]

There are two natural functors relating the fibre category \( F^{-1}(d) \) with left and right comma categories \( F/d \) and \( d \setminus F \). Precisely, we have functors

\[
i_*: F^{-1}(d) \hookrightarrow d \setminus F
\]

\[
c \mapsto (d \xrightarrow{\cong} Fc, c) = (\text{id}_d, c)
\]

and

\[
j_*: F^{-1}(d) \hookrightarrow F/d
\]

\[
c \mapsto (Fc \xrightarrow{\cong} d, c) = (\text{id}_d, c)
\]

In general, these functors are not homotopy equivalences.

**Definition 3.8.2.** A functor \( F: C \to D \) is pre-fibred if for any \( d \in \text{Ob}(D) \) the induced functor \( i_* \) has a right adjoint. We denote this right adjoint functor by \( i^!: d \setminus F \to F^{-1}(d) \).

**Definition 3.8.3.** Dually, we say that a functor \( F: C \to D \) is pre-cofibred if the functor \( j_*: F^{-1}(d) \hookrightarrow F/d \) has a left adjoint, which we will denote \( j^*: F/d \to F^{-1}(d) \).
Note that if a functor $F: C \to D$ is pre-fibred, Proposition 3.2.2 implies that the functors $i_*$ induces a homotopy equivalence $BF^{-1}(d) \xrightarrow{\sim} B(d/F)$. Similarly, for a pre-cofibred functor $F$, the functor $j_*$ induces a homotopy equivalence $BF^{-1}(d) \xrightarrow{\sim} B(F/d)$.

Let now $F: C \to D$ be a pre-fibred functor, and let $f: d \to d'$ be a fixed morphism in $D$. Define the base change functor $f^*: F^{-1}(d') \to F^{-1}(d)$ as the composition

$$F^{-1}(d') \xrightarrow{i'_*} d'/F \xrightarrow{f} d\backslash F \xrightarrow{i^*} F^{-1}(d)$$

The functor $f: d\backslash F \to d/F$ is defined by the pre-composing with $f$, i.e.

$$f: [d' \toFc] \mapsto [d \xrightarrow{f} d' \toFc].$$

If $f: d \to d'$ and $g: d' \to d''$ is a composable pair of morphisms in $D$, there exists a natural transformation of functors $\alpha: f^*g^* \Rightarrow (gf)^*$ induced by the counit $\varepsilon: i'_* \circ (i')^\dagger = \text{id}_{d\backslash F}$ of the adjunction $(i'_*, (i')^\dagger)$:

$$F^{-1}(d'') \xrightarrow{i''_*} d''\backslash F \xrightarrow{g} d'/F \xrightarrow{(i')^\dagger} F^{-1}(d') \xrightarrow{\varepsilon} \text{id}_{d\backslash F} \xrightarrow{i'_*} d\backslash F \xrightarrow{f} d\backslash F \xrightarrow{i^*} F^{-1}(d) \quad (1.11)$$

**Definition 3.8.4.** A pre-fibred functor $F: C \to D$ is called fibred if for all composable pairs $f, g$ in Mor$(D)$ the natural transformation $\alpha: f^*g^* \Rightarrow (gf)^*$ defined above is an isomorphism.

**Definition 3.8.5.** Dually, a functor $F: C \to D$ is called cofibred if for all composable pairs $f, g$ in Mor$(D)$, $f: d \to d'$ and $g: d' \to d''$, the natural transformation $\beta: g_*f_* \Rightarrow (gf)_*$ induced by the unit $\eta: \text{id} \Rightarrow j'_* \circ (j')^*$ of the adjunction $((j')^*; j'_*)$ is an isomorphism. Here for any morphism $f$ in $D$ the induced functor $f_*$ is defined as a composition

$$F^{-1}(d) \xrightarrow{j_*} F/d \xrightarrow{f} F/d' \xrightarrow{j^*} F^{-1}(d')$$

similar to the definition for a fibred functor above. The natural transformation $\beta$ is defined by a diagram similar to the diagram (1.11).

**Corollary 3.8.6** (of Theorem 3.7.1). Assume a functor $F: C \to D$ is either fibered or cofibred, and assume $F^{-1}(d)$ is contractible for all $d \in \text{Ob}(D)$. Then $BF: BC \to D$ is a homotopy equivalence.

**Example 3.8.7** (Grothendieck). There is a one-to-one correspondence

$$\{\text{cofibred functors } F: C \to D\} \leftrightarrow \{\text{functors } D \to \text{Cats}\}$$

The correspondence is as follows. Given a cofibred functor $F: C \to D$, we associate to it the functor $F^{-1}: D \to \text{Cats}$ sending $d \mapsto F^{-1}(d) \in \text{Ob}(\text{Cats})$, $d \in \text{Ob}(D)$. The definition 3.8.4 of a fibred functor ensures that $F^{-1}$ is indeed a well-defined functor.

On the other hand, having a functor $X: D \to \text{Cats}$, we associate to it a cofibred functor $D \times X \xrightarrow{i} D$. 

38
3.9 Quillen’s Theorem B

**Theorem 3.9.1** (Quillen’s theorem B). Let \( F: C \to D \) be a functor such that for each \( f \in \text{Mor}(D) \), \( f: d \to d' \), the base change functor \( f_\ast: d'\setminus F \to d\setminus F \) is a homotopy equivalence. Then for every \( d \in \text{Ob}(D) \), the induced sequence of maps \( B(d\setminus F) \xrightarrow{Bj} BC \xrightarrow{BF} BD \) of classifying spaces is a homotopy fibration sequence (see Definition 3.0.10).

**Corollary 3.9.2.** For a functor \( F \) as in the theorem, there exists a long exact sequence of homotopy groups

\[
\cdots \to \pi_{n+1}(BD) \to \pi_n(B(d\setminus F)) \to \pi_n(BC) \to \pi_n(BD) \to \cdots
\]

**Proof of Theorem 3.9.1.** As in the proof of Quillen’s lemma 3.7.8 and Quillen’s theorem A, consider the bisimplicial set

\[
X = \{d_p \to \cdots \to d_0 \to F(c_0), \ c_0 \to \cdots \to c_p\}_{p,q}
\]

Let \( \pi: X \to B_s \text{D}^{\text{op}} \) be the obvious projection. Again, as in Proposition 3.7.8, \( \pi^{-1}(d) \simeq B_s(d\setminus F) \).

By the assumption, \( d'\setminus F \xrightarrow{\sim} d\setminus F \) is a homotopy equivalence. By Lemma 3.7.7, the sequence \( B(d\setminus F) \to BX \to BD^{\text{op}} \) is a homotopy fibration sequence.

On the other hand, we can factor \( Bj \) as follows:

\[
Bj: B(d\setminus F) \to BX \simeq B \text{diag}(X) = B(D\setminus F) \xrightarrow{\sim} BC
\]

where the last homotopy equivalence follows from Quillen’s lemma 3.7.8. Summarizing, we have the following commutative diagram

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
B(d\setminus F) & \xrightarrow{Bj} & BC \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \simeq \\
BX & \xrightarrow{\sim} & BD^{\text{op}}
\end{array}
\]

In the diagram above, the vertical map \( BX \to BC \) is the homotopy equivalence given by the composition \( BX \simeq B \text{diag}(X) = B(D\setminus F) \xrightarrow{\sim} BC \) from (1.12). Since all vertical arrow of the diagram are homotopy equivalences, and the top row is a homotopy fibration sequence, then so is the bottom row, which finishes the proof. \( \square \)
Chapter 2

Algebraic K-theory

1 Introduction and overview

The original application of the ideas we discussed in Section 3 is to higher algebraic K-theory, see [Qui73].

Higher algebraic K-theory assigns to any ring $A$ a sequence of abelian groups $K_i(A)$, $i \geq 0$, in a functorial way. The groups $K_i(A)$ are defined as the homotopy groups

$$K_i(A) := \pi_i[K(A)],$$

of a certain topological space $K(A)$, which is usually constructed in two steps.

The first step associates to $A$ a small category $\tilde{K}(A)$ depending functorially on $A$. Then, the space $K(A)$ is taken to be $BK(A)$, the geometric realization of $K(A)$.

In fact, there are several different ways to construct the category $K(A)$. We will only discuss the two original ones, called “plus” and “Q” constructions, both due to Quillen.

In each of the constructions, one starts with some obvious category $\tilde{K}(A)$ related to the ring $A$, which, however, does not have interesting homotopy theory. Then, to get $K(A)$ out of $\tilde{K}(A)$ one performs a certain natural, but highly non-obvious (a priori) modification, which changes drastically the homotopy properties of $BK(A)$.

The comparison between the two constructions suggests that it is natural to define K-theory not as a functor $A \mapsto BK(A) =: K(A)$ from Rings to Spaces, but as a functor from Rings to the category of (topological) spectra.

Recall that a spectrum is a sequence of (based) topological spaces $\{X_0, X_1, X_2, \ldots\}$ related by the so-called bonding maps $\sigma_i : X_i \xrightarrow{\sim} \Omega X_{i+1}$, which are assumed to be homeomorphisms, often even identities.

To extend the K-theory functor $K : \text{Rings} \to \text{Spaces}$ to a functor

$$K : \text{Rings} \to \text{Spectra}, \quad A \mapsto (X_i)_{i \geq 0}$$

one needs to construct $X_1$ such that $\Omega X_1 \simeq K(A)$, and then $X_2$ such that $\Omega X_2 = X_1$, etc. This process is called delooping of the K-theory of a ring, and there many different
constructions depending on the model for $K(A)$. Later we will briefly review a higher dimensional generalization of Quillen’s original $Q$-construction which gives such deloopings for all $n$. For some more details, see Section 7.2.

Remark 1.0.1. There is another highly interesting (and apparently less known) generalization of $Q$-construction to a non-additive setting, due to Loday and Fiedorowicz [FL91].

2 Classical K-theory

We assume that the reader have already seen at least the very basics of $K$-theory.

Fix an associative unital ring $A$, and let $\mathcal{P}(A)$ be the category of finitely generated (right) projective $A$-modules.

2.1 The group $K_0(A)$

Denote by $[\mathcal{P}(A)]$ the set of isomorphism classes of objects in $\mathcal{P}(A)$. The set $[\mathcal{P}(A)]$ has a structure of a unital abelian monoid, with multiplication given by $\oplus$, and the class of the zero module 0 as the unit.

For any unital abelian monoid $M$ there exists unique abelian group $M\rightarrow 1 M$ called the group completion of $M$ together with a morphism $\gamma: M \rightarrow M\rightarrow 1 M$ of monoids, characterized uniquely by the following property. For any abelian group $G$ and a map $\varphi: M \rightarrow G$ of monoids, there exists unique group homomorphism $\overline{\varphi}: M\rightarrow 1 M \rightarrow G$ making the following diagram commute:

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
M & \xrightarrow{\varphi} & G \\
\downarrow{\gamma} & & \downarrow{\overline{\varphi}} \\
M\rightarrow 1 M & \end{array}
$$

In other words, the functor $\text{AbMon} \rightarrow \text{Groups}$ assigning $M \mapsto M\rightarrow 1 M$ is left adjoint to the forgetful functor $\text{Groups} \rightarrow \text{AbMon}$.

Definition 2.1.1. The group $K_0(A)$ is defined to be $K_0(A) = [\mathcal{P}(A)]\rightarrow 1 [\mathcal{P}(A)]$.

Exercise 1. This definition agrees with the usual one.

2.2 The group $K_1(A)$

Consider the group $GL_n(A)$ of invertible $n \times n$ matrices with coefficients in $A$. There is a natural inclusion $GL_n(A) \hookrightarrow GL_{n+1}(A)$. Define $GL(A) = \text{colim}_n GL_n(A)$.

Definition 2.2.1. Define the group $K_1(A)$ to be $K_1(A) = GL(A)/[GL(A),GL(A)]$.

Consider the matrices $e_{ij}(a)$, for $1 \leq i \neq j \leq n$ and $a \in A$, having 1 along the diagonal and the element $a$ on the position $(i,j)$. These matrices are called elementary. Let $E_n(A)$ be the subgroup of $GL_n(A)$ generated by the elementary matrices, $E_n(A) = \langle e_{ij}(a) \rangle$. 42
Exercise 2. For any $a, b \in A$ and $i \neq j$ the elementary matrices satisfy the following relations.

1. $e_{ij}(a)^{-1} = e_{ij}(-a)$
2. $e_{ij}(a) \cdot e_{ij}(b) = e_{ij}(a + b)$
3. $[e_{ij}(a), e_{kl}(b)] = \begin{cases} 
1, & \text{if } j \neq k \text{ and } i \neq l \\
\alpha, & \text{if } j = k \text{ and } i \neq l \\
\beta, & \text{if } j \neq k \text{ and } i = l 
\end{cases}$

Corollary 2.2.2. If $n \geq 3$, then $E_n(A)$ is perfect.

Proof. If $n \geq 3$ take $j, k, l$ to be distinct so that $e_{ij}(a) = [e_{ik}(a), e_{kj}(1)]$, for all $1 \geq i \neq j \leq n$.

Notice that the inclusion $GL_n(A) \hookrightarrow GL_{n+1}(A)$ restricts to the inclusion $E_n(A) \hookrightarrow E_{n+1}(A)$. Thus we can define $E(A) = \text{colim}_n E_n(A)$.

Lemma 2.2.3 (Whitehead). $E(A) = [GL(A), GL(A)] = [E(A), E(A)]$.

Sketch of proof. First check that for any $\alpha, \beta \in GL_n(A)$,

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
\alpha & 0 \\
0 & \alpha^{-1}
\end{bmatrix} \in E_2n(A) \text{ and } \begin{bmatrix} \alpha, & \beta \\
0 & I
\end{bmatrix} \in E_2n(A)
\]

Hence $E_n = [E_n, E_n] \subseteq [GL_n, GL_n] \subseteq E_2n$. Taking colimit over $n$ we get the equality $E(A) = [E(A), E(A)] = [GL(A), GL(A)]$.

2.3 The group $K_2(A)$

For the details of the material of this section see the book [Mil71] by John Milnor.

Definition 2.3.1. Assume $n \geq 3$ and define the Steinberg group $St_n(A)$ as the group generated by symbols $x_{ij}(a)$ for $1 \leq i \neq j \leq n$ and $a \in A$ modulo the following two relations:

- $x_{ij}(a) \cdot x_{ij}(b) = x_{ij}(a + b)$
- $[x_{ij}(a), x_{kl}(b)] = \begin{cases} 
1, & \text{if } j \neq k \text{ and } i \neq l \\
x_{il}(ab), & \text{if } j = k \text{ and } i \neq l \\
x_{kj}(-ba), & \text{if } j \neq k \text{ and } i = l 
\end{cases}$

Note that these relations are a part of the relations from the Exercise 2. Thus the exists a natural projection $\varphi_n: St_n(A) \twoheadrightarrow E_n(A)$. We will think of $\varphi_n$ as a map to $GL_n(A)$ by composing it with the inclusion $E_n(A) \hookrightarrow GL_n(A)$. The homomorphisms $\varphi_n$ are compatible with the inclusions $GL_n(A) \hookrightarrow GL_{n+1}(A)$, we can define $St(A) = \text{colim} St_n(A)$ equipped with a homomorphism $St(A) \twoheadrightarrow GL(A)$.

Note that by the definition, $K_1(A) = \text{Coker} \varphi$. 

43
Definition 2.3.2. Define the second $K$-group to be $K_2(A) = \text{Ker} \varphi$.

Thus we have an exact sequence of groups

$$1 \to K_2(A) \to St(A) \to GL(A) \to K_1(A) \to K_1(A) \to 1$$

Theorem 2.3.3 (Steinberg). The group $K_2(A)$ is abelian. In fact, $K_2(A)$ is the center of $St(A)$

$$K_2(A) = Z(St(A))$$

Proof. If $x \in Z(St(A))$, then $\varphi(x) \in Z(E(A))$. But $Z(E(A)) = \{1\}$ (check!), and so $\varphi(x) = 1$. This shows the inclusion $Z(St(A)) \subseteq K_2(A)$.

Need to add proof of the opposite direction!!

Exercise 3. Show that $K_2(Z) \simeq Z/2Z$.

2.4 Universal central extensions

Let $G$ be a group, and $A$ be an abelian group.

Definition 2.4.1. A central extension of $G$ by $A$ is a short exact sequence

$$0 \to A \overset{i}{\to} \tilde{G} \overset{p}{\to} G \to 1$$

such that $i(A) \subseteq Z(\tilde{G})$.

Two such extensions $(\tilde{G}_1, i_1, p_1)$ and $(\tilde{G}_2, i_2, p_2)$ are equivalent if there exists a homomorphism $f: \tilde{G}_1 \to \tilde{G}_2$ making the following diagram commute:

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
1 & \to & A & \overset{i_1}{\to} & \tilde{G}_1 & \overset{p_1}{\to} & G & \to & 1 \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow f & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
1 & \to & A & \overset{i_2}{\to} & \tilde{G}_2 & \overset{p_2}{\to} & G & \to & 1
\end{array}
$$

Lemma 2.4.2 (see [BMP14]). There is a natural bijection

\{equiv. classes of extensions of $G$ by $A$\} $\longleftrightarrow$ $H^2(G, A)$

Fix a group $G$, and define the category $\text{Ext}_C(G)$ of central extensions of $G$ with the set of objects given by

$$\text{Ob}(\text{Ext}_C(G)) = \{p: \tilde{G} \to G \mid \text{Ker}(p) \subseteq Z(\tilde{G})\}$$

and morphisms between two central extensions $p_1: \tilde{G}_1 \to G$ and $p_2: \tilde{G}_2 \to G$ given by

$$\text{Hom}_{\text{Ext}_C(G)}(\tilde{G}_1, \tilde{G}_2) = \{f: \tilde{G}_1 \to \tilde{G}_2 \mid p_2 \circ f = p_1\}$$
Definition 2.4.3. The universal central extension of $G$ is the initial object in $\text{Ext}_C(G)$.

Theorem 2.4.4. The universal central extension of $G$ exists iff $G$ is perfect.

Proof. First let’s assume that the universal extension $p: \tilde{G} \to G$ exists. Since $p$ is surjective, it suffices to show that $\tilde{G}$ is perfect.

Assume $\tilde{G}$ is not perfect. Then the quotient $B = \tilde{G}/[\tilde{G}, \tilde{G}] \neq \{1\}$ is non-trivial. Consider the trivial extension $B \times G \to G$ of $G$ by $B$, and let $\pi: \tilde{G} \to B$ be the canonical projection. Then there are two non-equal morphisms

$$\tilde{G} \xrightarrow{(0,p)} B \times G \xrightarrow{(\pi,p)} G$$

which contradicts the fact that $\tilde{G}$ is the initial object in $\text{Ext}_C(G)$.

Assume now that $G$ is perfect. We will need the following construction due to Hopf. Let $G$ be any group for a moment. Consider a presentation $G \simeq F/R$ of the group $G$. Then there are two natural central extensions

1. $1 \to R_{\frac{[F,F]}{[R,F]}} \to F_{\frac{[F,F]}{[R,F]}} \to G \to 1$

2. $1 \to R_{\frac{R \cap [F,F]}{[R,F]}} \to \frac{[F,F]}{[R,F]} \to [G,G] \to 1$

Theorem 2.4.5 (Hopf). $sH_2(G, \mathbb{Z}) \simeq \frac{R_{\cap [F,F]}}{[R,F]}$

We claim that if $G$ is perfect, the second sequence is the universal extension of $G = [G,G]$. To see this, we first prove the following

Lemma 2.4.6. Let $\tilde{G}, \tilde{G}'$ be two central extensions of $G$, with $\tilde{G}$ being perfect. Then there is at most one morphism $\tilde{G} \to \tilde{G}'$ in $\text{Ext}_C(G)$.

Proof of lemma. Let $f_1, f_2: \tilde{G} \to \tilde{G}'$ be two such morphisms. Then for any $g, h \in \tilde{G}$ there exist central elements $c, c' \in Z(\tilde{G}')$ such that

$$f_2(g) = f_1(g)c$$
$$f_1(h) = f_2(h)c'$$

But then $f_1(ghg^{-1}h^{-1}) = f_2(ghg^{-1}h^{-1})$, i.e. $f_1$ and $f_2$ agree on $[G,G]$. Since we assumed $G$ is perfect, $f_1 = f_2$. \qed

Need to complete the proof!!! \qed

Proposition 2.4.7 (Recognition criterion). For a central extension $\tilde{G} \to G$ the following are equivalent:
1. \( \tilde{G} \) is universal;

2. \( \tilde{G} \) is perfect and every central extension of \( \tilde{G} \) splits;

3. \( H_1(\tilde{G}, \mathbb{Z}) = H_2(\tilde{G}, \mathbb{Z}) = 0 \).

**Theorem 2.4.8** (Kervaire, Steinberg). For an associative unital ring \( A \), the natural exact sequence

\[
1 \to K_2(A) \to St(A) \to E(A) \to 1 \tag{2.1}
\]

is the universal extension of \( E(A) \). Hence, by Hopf construction, \( K_2(A) \simeq H_2(E(A), \mathbb{Z}) \).

The key lemma in the proof of the above theorem is the following.

**Lemma 2.4.9.** For \( n \geq 5 \), every central extension of \( St_n(A) \) splits. Therefore, \( St_n(A) \) is the universal central extension of \( E_n(A) \) for \( \forall n \geq 5 \).

**Remark 2.4.10.** If \( n = 2 \), \( E_2(A) \) is not perfect. For example, \( E_2(\mathbb{Z}/2\mathbb{Z}) \) is solvable.

**Remark 2.4.11.** Lemma 2.4.9 fails for \( n \leq 4 \).

**Definition 2.4.12.** Define \( K_3(A) = H_3(St(A), \mathbb{Z}) \).

**Remark 2.4.13.** For \( n \geq 4 \) it is not known how to express \( K_n(A) \) in “elementary terms.”

### 3 Higher K-theory via “plus”-construction

#### 3.1 Acyclic spaces and maps

To define Quillen’s “plus”-construction we first need the notion of an acyclic space. In our exposition we will follow the paper [HH79]. In this section we will assume all our spaces to be based CW-complexes.

**Definition 3.1.1.** A topological space \( X \) is called acyclic if it has homology of the point. In other words, \( X \) is acyclic if its reduced homology groups vanish

\[
\tilde{H}_i(X, \mathbb{Z}) = 0, \forall i \in \mathbb{Z}
\]

**Lemma 3.1.2.** Let \( X \) be acyclic. Then the following holds.

1. The space \( X \) is connected.
2. The fundamental group \( G := \pi_1(X, \ast) \) is a perfect group, i.e. \( G = [G, G] \).
3. \( H_2(G, \mathbb{Z}) = 0 \).
Proof. The first statement is obvious.

The second statement follows immediately from the standard fact that $H_1(X, Z) \simeq \pi_1(X)/[\pi_1(X), \pi_1(X)]$ and vanishing of $H_1(X, Z)$ because of the acyclicity of $X$.

Recall that for any CW complex $X$ we have its Postnikov decomposition

\[
\begin{array}{ccccccc}
\cosk_1(X) & \leftarrow & \cosk_1(X) & \leftarrow & \ldots & \leftarrow & \cosk_n(X) & \leftarrow & \ldots \\
& & & & f_1 & & & f_n & \\
& & & & X & & & & \\
\end{array}
\]

where $\cosk_1(X) = K(\pi_1(X), 1) = BG$ is the corresponding Eilenberg-Maclane space, constructed from $X$ by adjoining cells of dimensions 3, 4, 5, \ldots to kill all the higher homotopy groups. The the map $f_1: X \to BG$ is the natural inclusion.

Let’s now compute $H_2(G, Z)$. Applying the above construction, we get a map $f = f_1: X \to BG$. Let $Ff$ be the homotopy fiber of $f$. So we get a homotopy fibration $Ff \to X \xrightarrow{f} BG$ (see Section 3 for definitions and details). It induces a long exact sequence of homotopy groups

\[
\begin{array}{cccccccc}
\ldots & \rightarrow & \pi_2(BG) & \rightarrow & \pi_1(Ff) & \rightarrow & \pi_1(X) & \xrightarrow{\sim} & \pi_1(BG) & \rightarrow & \pi_0(Ff) & \rightarrow & \pi_0(X) \\
& & \| & & \| & & \| & & \| & & \| & & \\
& & 0 & & \{1\} & & G & & \{1\} & & \{1\} & & \\
\end{array}
\]

In this sequence, the map $\pi_1(X) \to \pi_1(BG) = G$ is a natural isomorphism. Therefore, both groups $\pi_1(Ff) \simeq \{1\}$ and $\pi_1(Ff) \simeq \{1\}$ are trivial, and so $Ff$ is connected simply connected. Therefore, the space $Ff$ is homotopy equivalent to the universal covering $\tilde{X}$ of $X$.

Consider the homological Leray–Serre spectral sequence associated with the fibration $\tilde{X} \to X \to BG$. Its second page is $E^2_{pq} = H_p(BG, H_q(\tilde{X}, Z))$, and the sequence converges to $H_{p+q}(X, Z)$. Notice that basically by definition, there is an isomorphism $H_p(BG, H_q(\tilde{X}, Z)) \simeq H_p(G, H_q(\tilde{X}, Z))$.

**Lemma 3.1.3.** Given any first quadrant (homological) spectral sequence $E^2_{pq} \Rightarrow H_{p+q}$, there exists a canonical five term exact sequence

\[
H_2 \rightarrow E^2_{2,0} \xrightarrow{d_0^2} E^2_{0,1} \rightarrow H_1 \rightarrow E^2_{1,0} \rightarrow 0
\]

**Proof of Lemma.** This is a standard fact. See, for example, Exercise 5.1.2 in [Wei94].

Applying Lemma 3.1.3 in our case give an exact sequence

\[
\begin{array}{cccccccc}
H_2(X, Z) & \rightarrow & H_2(G, H_0(\tilde{X}, Z)) & \rightarrow & H_0(G, H_1(\tilde{X}, Z)) & \rightarrow & H_1(X, Z) & \rightarrow & H_1(G, H_0(\tilde{X}, Z)) \\
& & \| & & \| & & \| & & \| & & \\
& & 0 & & H_2(G, Z) & & 0 & & 0 & & \\
\end{array}
\]

47
In the diagram above, $H_2(X, \mathbb{Z}) = 0$ and $H_1(X, \mathbb{Z}) = 0$ because of the acyclicity of $X$. Since $X$ is connected, and $\bar{X}$ is its double cover, it is also connected, and hence $H_0(\bar{X}, \mathbb{Z}) = \mathbb{Z}$. Since $\bar{X}$ is simply connected by the definition of the universal cover, the group $H_1(\bar{X}, \mathbb{Z})$ vanishes. Thus the exact sequence implies $H_2(G, \mathbb{Z})$, which finishes the proof. □

**Definition 3.1.4.** Let $X, Y$ be two based connected CW complexes. A map $f: X \to Y$ is acyclic if its homotopy fiber $Ff$ is acyclic.

**Remark 3.1.5.** Note that a space $X$ is acyclic if and only if the constant map $X \to \ast$ is acyclic.

**Corollary 3.1.6.** If $f: X \to Y$ is acyclic, then

1. The induced homomorphism $f_*: \pi_1(X) \to \pi_1(Y)$ is surjective;
2. $\ker(f_*)$ is a perfect normal subgroup of $\pi_1(X)$.

**Proof.** Consider the long exact sequence associated to the fibration sequence $Ff \to X \to Y$

$$\cdots \to \pi_1(Ff) \to \pi_1(X) \to \pi_1(Y) \to \pi_0(Ff) \to \cdots$$

Since $f$ is acyclic, its homotopy fiber $Ff$ is connected, and so $\pi_0(Ff) = \{1\}$. Thus the map $f_*: \pi_1(X) \to \pi_1(Y)$ is surjective.

Lemma 3.1.2 implies that $\pi_1(Ff)$ is perfect. Then $\ker F_*$ is also perfect since it is an image of a perfect group. □

**Exercise 1.** Show that if $f: X \to Y$ is acyclic and s.t. $f_*: \pi_1(X) \to \pi_1(Y)$ is an isomorphism, then $f$ is a homotopy equivalence.

A useful characterization of acyclic maps (due to Quillen) is provided by the following

**Proposition 3.1.7.** Let $X, Y$ be based connected CW complexes. Then $f: X \to Y$ is acyclic iff the induced map

$$f_*: H_\bullet(X, f^*\mathcal{L}) \xrightarrow{\sim} H_\bullet(Y, \mathcal{L})$$

is an isomorphism for any local system (locally constant sheaf, or equivalently, a $\pi_1(Y)$-module) $\mathcal{L}$ on $Y$.

**Proof.** To simplify notation, we will write $\mathcal{L}$ instead of $f^*\mathcal{L}$ for the pull-back of $\mathcal{L}$ to $X$. Assume first that $f$ is acyclic, with acyclic homotopy fiber $Ff$. Since $\pi_1(Ff) \to \pi_1(X) \to \pi_1(Y)$ is exact, the image of $\pi_1(Ff)$ in $\pi_1(Y)$ is trivial, and so $\pi_1(Ff)$ acts trivially on $\mathcal{L}$. Since $f$ is acyclic, $H_i(Ff, \mathbb{Z}) = 0$ for all $i \geq 1$ and $H_0(Ff, \mathbb{Z}) = \mathbb{Z}$. Hence, by the Universal Coefficients theorem, $H_i(Ff, \mathcal{L}) = 0$ for all $i \geq 1$ and $H_0(Ff, \mathcal{L}) \simeq \mathcal{L}$. Consider the Leray-Serre spectral sequence for the fibration $Ff \to X \to Y$, i.e.

$$E^2_{pq} = H_p(Y, H_q(Ff, \mathcal{L})) \Rightarrow H_{p+q}(X, \mathcal{L})$$

48
This sequence degenerates on the second page, because $E^2_{pq} = 0$ for $q \neq 0$ as we discussed above. Hence, using the isomorphism $H_0(Ff, \mathcal{L}) = \mathcal{L}$, we get the isomorphisms

$$H_p(Y, \mathcal{L}) \simeq H_p(X, \mathcal{L}), \forall p \geq 0$$

Let’s prove the opposite direction. Assume the isomorphism (2.2) holds for any local system $\mathcal{L}$ on $Y$. The proof of acyclicity of $f$ will be in two steps.

First, assume that $Y$ is simply connected, i.e. $\pi_1(Y) = \{1\}$. Then it suffices to only consider $\mathcal{L} = \mathbb{Z}$, the constant sheaf, as $\pi_1(Y)$ acts trivially on any $\mathcal{L}$. Assume $H_\bullet(X, \mathbb{Z}) \simeq H_\bullet(Y, \mathbb{Z})$.

**Lemma 3.1.8 (Comparison theorem).** Let $E^r_{pq} \Rightarrow H_n$ and $E'^r_{pq} \Rightarrow H'_n$ be two spectral sequences. Let $h: H_\bullet$ to $H'_\bullet$ be a homomorphism compatible with a map $f: E \rightarrow E'$ of the spectral sequences. If for some $r$ the map $f^r: E^r_{pq} \rightarrow E'^r_{pq}$ is an isomorphism for all $p,q$, then $h: H_\bullet \rightarrow H'_\bullet$ is an isomorphism.

Applying the Comparison theorem to Leray-Serre spectral sequences associated to the fibrations $Ff \rightarrow X \xrightarrow{f} Y$ and $* \rightarrow Y \xrightarrow{\text{id}} Y$, we conclude $\tilde{H}_\bullet(Ff, \mathbb{Z}) = 0$, which means that both $Ff$ and $f$ are acyclic.

The case of non-simply connected $Y$ can be reduced to the previous one by the following trick. Let $\tilde{Y}$ be the universal covering of $Y$. Put $\tilde{X} = X \times_Y \tilde{Y}$ which is a covering of $X$. We denote the natural map $\tilde{X} \rightarrow \tilde{Y}$ by $\tilde{f}$.

Then there are natural isomorphisms

$$H_\bullet(\tilde{Y}, \mathbb{Z}) \simeq H_\bullet(Y, \mathcal{L})$$

$$H_\bullet(\tilde{X}, \mathbb{Z}) \simeq H_\bullet(X, \mathcal{L})$$

where $\mathcal{L} = \mathbb{Z}[\pi_1(Y)]$. The assumption $H_\bullet(X, \mathcal{L}) \simeq H_\bullet(Y, \mathcal{L})$ implies that the map $\tilde{f}$ induces an isomorphism $H_\bullet(\tilde{X}, \mathbb{Z}) \simeq H_\bullet(\tilde{Y}, \mathbb{Z})$. Since $\tilde{Y}$ is simply-connected, we can apply the previous case, and conclude that $F\tilde{f}$ is an acyclic space. But $\tilde{X} \rightarrow X$ and $\tilde{Y} \rightarrow Y$ are both coverings, and so by the path lifting property of coverings

$$F\tilde{f} \rightarrow \tilde{X} \xrightarrow{\tilde{f}} \tilde{Y}$$

$$\simeq$$

$$Ff \rightarrow X \xrightarrow{f} Y$$

Hence $F\tilde{f} \simeq Ff$, and so $Ff$ is acyclic, which means that the map $f$ is acyclic.

\[ \square \]
3.2 Plus construction

**Definition 3.2.1.** Let $X$ be a based connected CW complex. Let $N \subseteq \pi_1(X)$ be a perfect normal subgroup of $\pi_1(X)$. A +-construction on $X$ relative to $N$ is an acyclic map $f: X \to X^+_N$, depending on $N$, such that

$$\text{Ker } [f_*: \pi_1(X) \to \pi_1(X^+_N)] = N$$

In other words, the induced map $f_*: \pi_1(X) \to \pi_1(X^+_N)$ is isomorphic to the projection $\pi_1(X) \twoheadrightarrow \pi_1(X)/N$.

**Theorem 3.2.2** (Quillen). Let $X, N$ be as in the Definition 3.2.1. Then

1. The +-construction $f: X \to X^+_N$ exists.
2. The map $f: X \to X^+_N$ is universal (initial) in the homotopy category among all maps $g: X \to Y$, where $Y$ is based connected, such that $g_*(N) = \{1\}$ in $\pi_1(Y)$. In particular, $X^+_N$ is unique up to homotopy.

Recall that any group $G$ has unique largest perfect subgroup, which is automatically normal. We denote this subgroup by $P(G)$ and call it the perfect radical of $G$.

**Definition 3.2.3.** A +-construction on $X$ with respect to the perfect radical $P[\pi_1(X)]$ is called the plus construction, and is denoted by $f: X \to X^+$.

3.3 Higher K-groups via plus construction

Let $A$ be a unital associative ring. Consider the group $GL(A)$ (see Section 2.2 for the notation). Consider the classifying space $BGL(A)$. By the very definition,

$$\pi_i(BGL(A), \mathbb{Z}) = \pi_i(GL(A), \mathbb{Z}) = \begin{cases} GL(A), & \text{if } i = 1 \\ 0, & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

**Definition 3.3.1.** For any $i \geq 1$ define $K_i(A)$ to be $K_i(A) = \pi_i(BGL(A)^+)$.

**Corollary 3.3.2.** The following is an immediate consequence of the definition.

1. For $i = 1$, we have

$$K_1(A) = \pi_1(BGL(A)^+) = \pi_1(BGL(A)^+)/P(\pi_1(BGL(A)^+)) = GL(A)/[GL(A), GL(A)]$$

and so Quillen’s definition of $K_1(A)$ coincides with the classical definition, see Section 2.2. The last equality follows from the Whitehead lemma 2.2.3.
2. \( K_i : \text{Rings} \to \text{Ab} \) is a functor from the category of unital associative rings to the category of abelian groups.

3. The space \( BGL(A)^+ \) is uniquely up to homotopy characterized by the properties that \( \pi_1(BGL(A)^+) = K_1(A) \) and \( H_*(BGL(A)^+, L) = H_*(GL(A), L) \) for any \( K_1(A) \)-module \( L \).

4. \( BGL(A)^+ \) is a homotopy commutative H-space. Indeed, there is a natural inclusion \( GL_n(A) \times GL_m(A) \to GL_{n+m}(A) \), for any \( \alpha \in GL_n(A) \) and \( \beta \in GL_m(A) \) given by

\[
(\alpha, \beta) \mapsto \begin{bmatrix} \alpha & 0 \\ 0 & \beta \end{bmatrix}
\]

Composing this map with the inclusion \( GL_{n+m}(A) \hookrightarrow GL(A) \) and applying the classifying space functor, we get

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
BGL_n(A) \times BGL_m(A) & \rightarrow & BGL(A) \\
& & \rightarrow \quad BGL(A)^+ \\
& & \rightarrow \quad BGL(A)^+ \land BGL(A)^+
\end{array}
\]

**Theorem 3.3.3** (Quillen’s Recognition Criterion). The map \( f : BGL(A) \to BGL(A)^+ \) is universal among all maps to homotopy commutative H-spaces: given any map \( g : BGL(A) \to H \) of \( H \)-spaces, there exists a map \( h : BGL(A)^+ \to H \) making the following diagram commute:

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
BGL(A) & \rightarrow & H \\
\downarrow f & & \downarrow h \\
BGL(A)^+ & \rightarrow &
\end{array}
\]

The map \( h \) is not unique, but the induced map \( h_* : \pi_i(BGL(A)^+) \to \pi_i(H) \) is independent of the choice of \( h \).

To incorporate \( K_0(A) \), we make the following

**Definition 3.3.4.** The K-theory space of \( A \) is the space

\[
K(A) = K_0(A) \times BGL(A)^+ = \bigsqcup_{K_0(A)} BGL(A)^+
\]

Then automatically

\[
\pi_0(K(A)) = K_0(A) \\
\pi_i(K(A)) = K_i(A), \ \forall i \geq 1
\]
Remark 3.3.5. There are other models for the space $K(A)$. In particular, we will discuss the $Q$-construction later.

Proposition 3.3.6. Quillen’s definition of $K_2(A)$ agrees with the classical Milnor-Steinberg definition 2.3.2.

Remark 3.3.7. By Kervaire–Steinberg theorem 2.4.8, the exact sequence

$$1 \rightarrow K_2(A) \rightarrow St(A) \rightarrow E(A) \rightarrow 1$$

is the universal central extension of $E(A)$. Classification theorem of central extensions (see Lemma 2.4.2) implies $K_2(A) = H_2(E(A), \mathbb{Z})$.

Proof. We need to show that $\pi_2(BGL(A)^+) \simeq H_2(E(A), \mathbb{Z})$.

Lemma 3.3.8. Let $N \trianglelefteq G$ be a perfect normal subgroup of a group $G$. Consider the + -construction $f: BG \rightarrow BG_N^+$ corresponding to $N$, and let $Ff$ be its homotopy fiber. Then

1. $\pi_1(Ff)$ is isomorphic to the universal central extension of $N$.
2. $\pi_2(BG_N^+) \simeq H_2(N, \mathbb{Z})$.

Proof of lemma. Consider the homotopy fibration $Ff \rightarrow BG \rightarrow BG_N^+$. It yields

$$\ldots \rightarrow \pi_2(BG_N^+) \rightarrow \pi_1(Ff) \rightarrow \pi_1(BG) \rightarrow \pi_1(BG_N^+) \rightarrow \pi_0(F) \rightarrow \ldots$$

\[ \begin{array}{c|c|c|c}
\{1\} & G & G/N & \{1\} \\
\end{array} \]

Therefore, we have an exact sequence

$$1 \rightarrow \pi_2(BG_N^+) \rightarrow \pi_1(Ff) \rightarrow N \rightarrow 1$$

Note, by the general properties of homotopy fibrations (ref. ???), $\pi_2(BG_N^+)$ is in the center of $\pi_1(Ff)$. By Lemma 3.1.2, $\pi_1(Ff)$ is a perfect group, and so

$$H_1(\pi_1(Ff), \mathbb{Z}) = 0$$
$$H_2(\pi_1(Ff), \mathbb{Z}) = 0$$

Recognition criterion 2.4.7 of universal central extensions implies that $\pi_1(Ff)$ is isomorphic to the universal central extension of $N$. Proof of Theorem 2.4.4 implies the isomorphism $\pi_2(BG_N^+) \simeq H_2(N, \mathbb{Z})$, which follows from Hopf theorem 2.4.5. This finishes the proof of the lemma.

Proposition immediately follows from the lemma applied to $N = E(A) \subseteq GL(A) = G$, which gives isomorphism $K_2(A) = \pi_2(BGL(A)^+) = H_2(E(A, \mathbb{Z})$. 

52
Lemma 3.3.9. Let \( N \trianglelefteq G \) be a perfect normal subgroup of a group \( G \) and \( f : BG \to BG_N^+ \) be the corresponding +-construction. Then the composition \( BN \to BG \to BG_N^+ \) factors as follows:

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
BN & \longrightarrow & BG \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
\quad & & BG_N \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
BN^+ & & BN^+
\end{array}
\]

So \( BN^+ \) is homotopy equivalent to the universal covering space of \( BG_N^+ \). Hence we have isomorphisms

\[
\pi_i(BN^+) \simeq \pi_i(BG_N^+), \forall i \geq 2
\]

Corollary 3.3.10. For any ring \( A \), \( K_i(A) \simeq \pi_i(BE(A)^+) \) for \( i \geq 2 \).

Proof. Apply the previous lemma to \( N = E(A), G = GL(A) \). □

Let \( 1 \to A \to \tilde{G} \to G \to 1 \) be the universal central extension of \( G \). Theorem 2.4.4 implies that \( G, \tilde{G} \) are perfect groups. Consider the composite map

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
BA & \longrightarrow & B\tilde{G} \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
\quad & & BG \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
\quad & & BG^+ \\
\end{array}
\]

This gives a sequence \( BA \to B\tilde{G}^+ \to BG^+ \).

Lemma 3.3.11. The sequence \( BA \to B\tilde{G}^+ \to BG^+ \) is a homotopy fibration sequence. Hence

\[
\pi_i(B\tilde{G}^+) = 0, \ i = 0, 1, 2 \\
\pi_i(BG^+) = \pi_i(BG^+), \ i \geq 3
\]

Corollary 3.3.12. For \( i \geq 3 \) there is an isomorphism \( K_i(A) \simeq \pi_i(BSt(A)^+) \). In particular, \( K_3(A) \simeq H_3(St(A), \mathbb{Z}) \) (Gersten’s theorem).

Proof. Apply Lemma 3.3.9 to the extension

\[
1 \to K_2(A) \to St(A) \to E(A) \to 1
\]

Lemma 3.3.9 implies that \( \pi_i(BSt(A)^+) \simeq \pi_i(BE(A)^+) \) for \( i \geq 3 \). Then by Lemma 3.3.8, \( \pi_i(BE(A)^+) \simeq K_1(A) \). □
3.4 Milnor K-theory of fields

Let’s re-write the definition of Steinberg group $St(A)$, see 2.3.1, as follows. It is a group generated by symbols $x_{ij}(a)$ for $i, j \geq 1, i \neq j, a \in A$ satisfying the following relations:

\[ x_{ij}(a)x_{ij}(b) = x_{ij}(a + b) \]
\[ x_{ij}(a)x_{kl}(b) = x_{ij}(b)x_{ij}(a), \quad i \neq l, j \neq k \]
\[ x_{ij}(a)x_{jk}(b) = x_{jk}(b)x_{ij}(a) \]

We also recall from Section 2.3 that there is a natural projection $\varphi: St(A) \to E(A)$ sending $x_{ij}(a) \mapsto e_{ij}(a)$ with $\text{Ker} \varphi \simeq K_2(A)$.

Assume that $a, b$ are commuting elements in $E(A)$. Choose $\tilde{a}, \tilde{b} \in St(A)$ s.t. $\varphi(\tilde{a}) = a$ and $\varphi(\tilde{b}) = b$. Define operation

\[ a \cdot b := [\tilde{a}, \tilde{b}] = \tilde{a} \tilde{b} \tilde{a}^{-1} \tilde{b}^{-1} \]

**Lemma 3.4.1.** For any commuting $a, b \in E(A)$,

1. $a \cdot b$ is well-defined, i.e. it doesn’t depend on the choices of $\tilde{a}, \tilde{b}$;
2. for any $s \in GL(A)$, $(sas^{-1}) \cdot (sbs^{-1}) = a \cdot b$.

**Proof.** The proof is just a direct calculation. \qed

**Definition 3.4.2.** Let $x, y \in A^\times$ be commuting units in $A$. Define their Steinberg symbol by

\[ \{x, y\} = \begin{bmatrix} x & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & x^{-1} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \cdot \begin{bmatrix} y & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & y^{-1} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} x & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & x^{-1} \end{bmatrix} \cdot \begin{bmatrix} y & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & y^{-1} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \in K_2(A) \]

For any unit $u \in A^\times$ define

\[ g_{ij}(u) := x_{ij}(u)x_{ji}(-u^{-1})x_{ij}(u) \]
\[ h_{ij}(u) := g_{ij}(u)g_{ij}(-1) \]

Then by the definition, $\{u, v\} = [h_{ij}(u), h_{ik}(v)]$

**Exercise 2.** If $u + v = 1$, then $\{u, v\} = h_{12}(uv)h_{12}(u)^{-1}h_{12}(v)^{-1}$.

**Lemma 3.4.3.** If both $u, 1 - u$ are units in $A$, then

\[ \{u, 1 - u\} = 1 \]
\[ \{u, -u\} = 1 \]
Proof. First, notice that $g_{12}(-1) = g_{12}(1) = x_{12}(1)x_{12}(-1)x_{21}(1)$, and moreover,

$$g_{12}(u)g_{21}(1) = x_{12}(-u^2)g_{12}(u)$$

$$x_{21}(1)g_{12}(v) = g_{12}(v)g_{12}(-v^2)$$

Since $u + v = 1$, $\frac{1}{u} + \frac{1}{v} = \frac{1}{uv}$. We have the following sequence of equalities in $St(A)$:

$$g_{12}(u)g_{12}(-1)g_{12}(v) = x_{12}(-u^2)g_{12}(u)x_{12}(-1)g_{12}(v)x_{12}(-v^2) = x_{12}(uv)x_{21}(-u^{-1})x_{12}(0)x_{21}(-v^{-1})x_{12}(v) = x_{12}(uv)x_{21}(1)$$

Multiplying by $g_{12}(-1)$ implies that $h_{12}(u)h_{12}(v) = h_{12}(uv)$ if $u + v = 1$. Therefore, \{u, v\} = 1 if $u + v = 1$.

Now, write $-u = \frac{1}{1 - w}$ in $A^\times$. Then

$$\{u, -u\} = \{u, 1 - u\} \cdot \{u, 1 - u^{-1}\}^{-1} = \{u^{-1}, 1 - u^{-1}\} = 1$$

which finishes the proof of the lemma.

Let now $A = \mathbb{F}$ be a field. Consider $\mathbb{F}^\times = \mathbb{F} \setminus \{0\}$, viewed as a $\mathbb{Z}$-module via $n.v = v^n$ for $n \in \mathbb{Z}$, $v \in \mathbb{F}^\times$. Therefore we can consider the tensor algebra

$$T(\mathbb{F}^\times) = \mathbb{Z} \oplus \mathbb{F}^\times \oplus (\mathbb{F}^\times)^{\otimes 2} \oplus \cdots \oplus (\mathbb{F}^\times)^{\otimes n} \oplus \cdots$$

**Definition 3.4.4.** Define Milnor $K$-theory ring $K^M(\mathbb{F})$ by

$$K^M(\mathbb{F}) = T(\mathbb{F}^\times) / \langle u \otimes (1 - u) \mid u \in \mathbb{F}^\times \setminus \{0, 1\} \rangle$$

Define $K^M_i(\mathbb{F})$ to be the $i$-th graded component of $K^M(\mathbb{F})$. So

$$K^M(\mathbb{F}) = \bigoplus_{i \geq 0} K^M_i(\mathbb{F})$$

So by definition, we have isomorphisms between Milnor’s and Quillen’s $K$-groups

$$K^M_0(\mathbb{F}) = \mathbb{Z} \simeq K_0(\mathbb{F})$$

$$K^M_1(\mathbb{F}) = \mathbb{F}^\times \simeq K_1(\mathbb{F})$$

where the isomorphism $\mathbb{F}^\times \simeq K_1(\mathbb{F})$ is given by

$$\mathbb{F}^\times = GL_1(\mathbb{F}) \rightarrow GL(\mathbb{F})$$

The homomorphism $\mathbb{F}^\times \rightarrow K_1(\mathbb{F})$ has a natural inverse induced by the determinant map

$$GL(\mathbb{F}) \xrightarrow{\det} \mathbb{F}^\times$$

$$K_1(\mathbb{F})$$

55
Notation 3.4.5. The image of \( u_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes u_n \) in \( K^M(\mathbb{F}) \) will be denoted by \((u_1, \ldots, u_n)\).

Theorem 3.4.6 (Matsumoto). The canonical map \( \mathbb{F}^\times \otimes \mathbb{F}^\times \to K_2(\mathbb{F}) \) mapping \( u \otimes v \mapsto \{u, v\} \) induces an isomorphism \( K^M_2(\mathbb{F}) \cong K_2(\mathbb{F}) \).

Thus the group \( K_2(\mathbb{F}) \) is given by the following presentation. It has generators \( \{u, v\} \) for each \( u, v \in \mathbb{F}^\times \) subject to the relations

\[
\{uu', v\} = \{u, v\}\{u', v\}
\]
\[
\{u, vv'\} = \{u, v\}\{u, v'\}
\]
\[
\{u, 1 - u\} = 1, \forall u \neq 0, 1
\]

Remark 3.4.7. By Lemma 3.4.3, the relation \( \{u, 1 - u\} = 1 \) implies that \( \{u, -u\} = 1 \). Therefore, we have the skew-symmetricity property

\[
\{u, v\}\{v, u\} = \{u, -uv\}\{v, -uv\} = \{uv, -uv\} = 1
\]

Corollary 3.4.8. If \( \mathbb{F} \) is a finite field, then \( K_2(\mathbb{F}) = 1 \).

Proof. This follows from the relations above and the fact that for a finite field \( \mathbb{F} \), the group \( \mathbb{F}^\times \) is cyclic. \( \square \)

Remark 3.4.9. Quillen showed that for a finite field \( \mathbb{F} = \mathbb{F}_q \) with \( q = p^n \) for a prime \( p \), \( K_2(\mathbb{F}_q) = 1 \) and \( K_{2i+1}(\mathbb{F}_q) = \mathbb{Z}/(q^i - 1)\mathbb{Z} \).

3.5 Loday product

Consider two associative unital rings \( A, B \). For a ring \( R \) we denote by \( R^n \) the \( R \)-module \( R^{\oplus n} \). Then for any \( n, m \in \mathbb{N} \) there is a natural (but not unique) isomorphism of \( A \otimes B \)-modules

\[
f_{nm}: A^n \otimes B^m \to (A \otimes B)^{nm}
\]
which induces maps

\[
GL_n(A) \times GL_m(B) \to GL_{nm}(A \otimes B).
\]

These maps induce the maps of plus constructions

\[
\tilde{f}_{nm}: BGL_n(A)^+ \times BGL_m(B)^+ \to BGL_{nm}(A \otimes B)^+ \to BGL(A \otimes B)^+
\]

A different choice of \( f_{nm} \) will give a different map \( f'_{nm} \) which would be conjugate to the original one, and so the induced maps \( f'_{nm} \) and \( \tilde{f}_{nm} \) on the plus constructions are homotopic to each other. Moreover, the maps \( f_{nm} \) are compatible with stabilizations in \( n, m \) (up to
homotopy). Since $\text{BGL}(A \otimes B)^+$ is a homotopy commutative H-space, we can define the map $g: \text{BGL}(A)^+ \wedge \text{BGL}(B)^+ \to \text{BGL}(A \otimes B)^+$ which is induced by the maps

$$\tilde{g}_{nm}(a, b) = \tilde{f}_{nm}(a, b) - \tilde{f}_{nm}(a, \ast) - \tilde{f}_{nm}(\ast, b)$$

where “$-$” denotes the structure of the H-space $\text{BGL}(A \otimes B)^+$. The map $g$ is well-defined up to weak homotopy equivalence. Taking homotopy groups, we obtain Loday’s cup product

$$\cup: K_i(A) \otimes K_j(B) \to K_{i+j}(A \otimes B)$$

**Theorem 3.5.1** (Loday). The $\cup$-product is functorial in $A, B$, and if $A$ is commutative, then the multiplication map $m: A \otimes A \to A$ is an algebra homomorphism, and so we get maps

$$K_i(A) \otimes K_j(A) \xrightarrow{\cup} K_{i+j}(A \otimes A) \xrightarrow{K_{i+j}(m)} K_{i+j}(A)$$

making $K(A) = \bigoplus_{i \geq 0} K_i(A)$ into a graded commutative ring.

**Exercise 3.** If $A = \mathbb{F}$ is a field, then Loday’s product $\cup: K_1(\mathbb{F}) \otimes K_1(\mathbb{F}) \to K_2(\mathbb{F})$ coincides with the Steinberg symbol map $\varphi$, see 2.3.1.

In general, for a field $A = \mathbb{F}$ there is a natural graded ring homomorphism $\nu: K^M(\mathbb{F}) \to K(\mathbb{F})$ from Milnor K-theory to the Quillen K-theory, given by

$$\nu_i(u_1, \ldots, u_i) = u_1 \cup \cdots \cup u_i$$

In degrees $i = 0, 1$ and 2 the map $\nu_i$ is an isomorphism of groups: $K^M_i(\mathbb{F}) \simeq K_i(\mathbb{F})$. For $i = 0, 1$ this is obvious; for $i = 2$ this follows from Matsumoto theorem 3.4.6. For $i \geq 3$ the maps $\nu_i$ are no longer isomorphisms, and we define groups

$$K_i^{\text{indec}}(\mathbb{F}) := \text{Coker}(\nu_i)$$

called indecomposable part of $K_i(\mathbb{F})$. The problem is how to compute it: this is open (or conjectural) in general (for infinite fields).

### 3.6 Bloch groups

If $\Gamma$ is an abelian group, define $\Lambda^2 \Gamma$ as

$$\Lambda^2 \Gamma = \Gamma \otimes \Gamma / \langle a \otimes b + b \otimes a \rangle$$

We denote the image of $a \otimes b$ in $\Lambda^2 \Gamma$ by $a \wedge b$. Note that $2(a \wedge a) = 0$ in $\Lambda^2 \Gamma$, but $a \wedge a$ is not necessarily zero.

**Definition 3.6.1.** Define the set of five term relations $FT(\mathbb{F})$ for a field $\mathbb{F}$ by

$$FT(\mathbb{F}) = \left\{ \left( x, y, \frac{1 - x^{-1}}{x}, \frac{1 - x}{x - 1}, \frac{1 - x^{-1}}{1 - y^{-1}} \right) : x \neq y, x, y \in \mathbb{F} \setminus \{0, 1\} \right\} \subset (\mathbb{F} \setminus \{0, 1\})^5$$

57
We will suppress \( F \) and write simply \( FT \) is the field \( F \) is understood. From now on, fix a field \( F \). Let \( \mathbb{Z}[FT] \) be the free abelian group generated by elements of \( FT = FT(F) \). Then we have
\[
\mathbb{Z}[FT] \xrightarrow{\nu} \mathbb{Z}[\mathbb{F} \setminus \{0, 1\}] \xrightarrow{\rho} \Lambda^2(\mathbb{F}^\times)
\]
where \( \nu(z) = z \wedge (1 - z) \) and \( \rho(z_0, z_1, z_3, z_4) = [z_0] - [z_1] + [z_2] - [z_3] + [z_4] \).

**Exercise 4.** Prove that \( \nu \circ \rho = 0 \), i.e. that the sequence above is a chain complex. Then Matsumoto’s theorem 3.4.6 implies that \( \text{Coker } \nu \simeq K_2(F) \).

**Definition 3.6.2.** Define the pre-Bloch group \( P(F) \) to be
\[
P(F) = \text{Coker } \rho = \mathbb{Z}[F\{0, 1\}] / \langle FT \rangle
\]
The Bloch group \( B(F) \) is defined as
\[
B(F) = \text{Ker } \nu / \text{Im}(\rho) = \text{Ker } \left[P(F) \xrightarrow{\nu} \mathbb{F}^\times \wedge \mathbb{F}^\times \right]
\]

**Theorem 3.6.3 (Suslin).** If \( F \) is any infinite field, there is a short exact sequence
\[
0 \rightarrow \tilde{\mu}_F \rightarrow K_3^\text{indec}(F) \rightarrow B(F) \rightarrow 0
\]
where \( \tilde{\mu}_F \) denotes the unique non-trivial extension of the group \( \mu_F \) of roots of 1 in \( F \) by \( \mathbb{Z}/2\mathbb{Z} \).

**Corollary 3.6.4.** Since \( \tilde{\mu}_F \) is torsion, there is an isomorphism of rationalized abelian groups
\[
B(F)_\mathbb{Q} \simeq K_3^\text{indec}(F)_\mathbb{Q},
\]
where for an abelian group \( A \) its rationalization \( A_\mathbb{Q} \) is the tensor product \( A_\mathbb{Q} = A \otimes_\mathbb{Z} \mathbb{Q} \).

### 3.7 Homology of Lie groups “made discrete”

**\( K_3(\mathbb{C}) \) and homology**

Recall that the groups \( K_i(F) \) were defined by \( K_i(F) = \pi_i(BGL(F)^+) \) for \( i \geq 1 \). Using Hurewicz homomorphism \( H : \pi_i(BGL(F)^+) \rightarrow H_i(BGL(F)^+) \) (see, for example, [May99, Chapter 15.1]) we get
\[
\begin{array}{c}
K_i(F) \xrightarrow{H} H_i(BGL(F)^+, \mathbb{Z}) \\
\| \ \\
\| \\
\| \\
H_i(BGL(F), \mathbb{Z}) \xrightarrow{\delta} H_i(GL(F)^\delta, \mathbb{Z})
\end{array}
\]
where by \( GL(F)^\delta \) we mean \( GL(F) \) viewed as an abstract group.

Let now \( F = \mathbb{C} \), \( i = 3 \). The obvious inclusion \( SL_2(\mathbb{C}) \hookrightarrow GL(\mathbb{C}) \) induces a map on homology (with \( \mathbb{Z} \)-coefficients)
\[
i_* : H_3(SL_2(\mathbb{C})^\delta) \rightarrow H_3(GL(\mathbb{C})^\delta)
\]
Remark 3.7.1. (1) The famous Milnor Conjecture states that for a suitable coefficients there should be an isomorphism
\[ H_\bullet(GL(C)^δ, A) \simeq H_\bullet(GL(C), A) \]

(2) There is a stabilization theorem due to Suslin.

**Theorem 3.7.2 (Suslin).** For any \( i \geq n \) there is an isomorphism
\[ H_i(GL_n(C)) \sim H_i(GL(C)) \]

**Theorem 3.7.3 (Dupont–Sah).** For \( F = C \) the group \( K_{3\text{indec}}(C) \) is a direct summand of \( K_3(C) \), and the image of the restriction of the Hurewicz map \( K_3(C) \xrightarrow{H} H_3(GL(C)) \) coincides with the image of the map \( i_* \). Thus, the Hurewicz map \( H \) induces an isomorphism
\[ K_{3\text{indec}}(C) \simeq H_3(SL_2(C)^δ) \]

**Problem:** we would like to identify \( H_3(SL_2(C)) \) in terms of \( B(C) \).

**Homology of discrete groups**

First we recall the standard method to compute homology of a discrete group. Let \( G \) be a discrete group. For any \( G \)-module \( A \) denote by \( A_G \) the module of coinvariants, defined as
\[ A_G = A \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}[G]} \mathbb{Z} \].
Then the homology \( H_\bullet(G, A) \) can be computed as the homology \( H[P_\bullet(A)_G] \) of the complex \( P_\bullet(A)_G \), where \( P_\bullet(A) \) is a projective resolution of the \( G \)-module \( A \), and \( P_\bullet(A)_G \) is the complex of coinvariants of \( P_\bullet(A) \). For \( A = \mathbb{Z} \), we simply write \( P \) for \( P_\bullet(\mathbb{Z}) \).

Let \( X \) be a space (or a set). In Example 1.6.3 we defined a simplicial set \( E_\bullet X \) with \( E_n X = X \times \cdots \times X = X^{n+1} \). The maps \( d_i \) and \( s_j \) send \((x_0, \ldots, x_n)\) to \((x_0, \ldots, \hat{x}_i, \ldots, x_n)\) and \((x_0, \ldots, x_j, x_j, \ldots, x_n)\) respectively.

Let \( C_\bullet(X) \) be the complex of free abelian groups
\[ C_n(X) = \mathbb{Z}[E_n(X)], \quad d_n = \sum_{i=0}^n d_i \]

It is easy to see that this complex is acyclic.

For \( X = G \), the natural diagonal action of \( G \) on \( C_n(G) \) defined by
\[ g \cdot C_n(G) \to C_n(G) \]
\[ g \cdot (g_0, \ldots, g_n) = (g g_0, \ldots, g g_n) \]

makes \( C_\bullet(G) \) into a right dg-module over \( G \), i.e. it is a complex of \( G \)-modules where the differential commutes with the \( G \)-action. The augmentation map \( \varepsilon : C_0(G) = \mathbb{Z}[G] \to \mathbb{Z} \) defined by \( g_0 \mapsto 1 \) makes \( C_\bullet(G) \to \mathbb{Z} \) into a resolution of the trivial \( G \)-module \( \mathbb{Z} \) by free \( \mathbb{Z}[G] \)-modules, and hence
\[ H_\bullet(G, \mathbb{Z}) \simeq H_\bullet(C(G)_G) \]
More generally, for any $G$-space $X$ the complex $C_\bullet(X)$ is a complex of right $G$-modules (in the same way as for $X = G$).

Consider for each $n \geq 0$ the configuration space of ordered $(n + 1)$-tuples of distinct points in $X$:

$$Conf_{n+1}(X) = \{(x_0, \ldots, x_n) \in X^{n+1} | x_i \neq x_j, \forall i \neq j\}$$

Note that the action of $G$ on $X$ extends diagonally to all configuration spaces. Let

$$C^n_\#(X) = \mathbb{Z}[Conf_{n+1}(X)] \subseteq C_n(X)$$

Then $C^n_\#(X)$ is a subcomplex of $G$-modules in $C_\bullet(X)$.

**Definition 3.7.4.** We say that $G$ acts on $X$ $k$-transitively if the induced action of $G$ on $Conf_k(X)$ is transitive.

**Remark 3.7.5.** Notice that $k$-transitivity implies $(k-1)$-transitivity. Moreover, $1$-transitive action is just the usual transitive action.

**Lemma 3.7.6.** Assume $G$ acts on $X$ $k$-transitively. Then

1. $C^i_\#(X)_G \simeq \mathbb{Z}$ for $i = 0, 1, \ldots, k-1$.
2. $C^k_\#(X)_G$ consists entirely of boundaries, so $C^k_\#(X)_G \rightarrow H_k(C^\#(X)_G)$.

**Proof.** Because of $k$-transitivity, $G$ acts transitively on all distinct $(i+1)$-tuples for any $i \leq k-1$, so $(x_0, \ldots, x_i)$ can be moved by $G$ to a single fixed one. This proves the first statement. The second statement follows obviously from the first. \qed

**Homology of Lie groups “made discrete”**

Let’s move back to our situation, where we had $G = SL_2(\mathbb{C})^\delta$, and take $X = \mathbb{CP}^1$. Then $G$ acts on $X$ via Möbius transformations

$$\begin{bmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{bmatrix}.z = \frac{az + b}{cz + d}$$

Then we get $C^\#_\bullet(\mathbb{CP}^1)$, a complex of $SL_2(\mathbb{C})^\delta$-modules. We will suppress $\delta$ from now on, always thinking of $SL_2(dC)$ as a discrete group, unless otherwise stated. The following two facts are standard.

**Lemma 3.7.7.**

1. The action of $SL_2(\mathbb{C})$ on $\mathbb{CP}^1$ is 3-transitive.
2. Any four distinct points $z_0, z_1, z_2, z_3$ are determined, up to $SL_2(\mathbb{C})$-action by the cross-ratio

$$[z_0 : z_1 : z_2 : z_3] := \frac{(z_0 - z_1)(z_1 - z_2)}{(z_0 - z_2)(z_1 - z_3)} \in \mathbb{C} \setminus \{0, 1\}$$
Hence $C_3^\#(\mathbb{C}P^1) = \mathbb{Z}$ for $i = 0, 1, 2$, and by Lemma 3.7.7, $C_3^\#(\mathbb{C}P^1) \simeq \mathbb{Z}[\mathbb{C} \setminus \{0, 1\}]$. Now, it is straightforward to check that the $FT$ relation from the Definition 3.6.2 of Bloch group is equivalent to

$$\sum_{i=0}^{4} (-1)^i [z_0 : \cdots : \hat{z}_i : \cdots : z_4] = 0$$

This means that the kernel of the cross-ratio map

$$\sigma: C_3^\#(\mathbb{C}P^1) \to \mathbb{Z}[\mathbb{C} \setminus \{0, 1\}] \to \mathcal{P}(\mathbb{C})$$

is precisely the boundaries in $C_3^\#(\mathbb{C}P^1)$. Therefore, by Lemma 3.7.6, $\sigma$ induces an isomorphism

$$\sigma: H_3\left[ C_\bullet^\#(\mathbb{C}P^1) \right] \xrightarrow{\simeq} \mathcal{P}(\mathbb{C})$$

**Lemma 3.7.8** (Dupont–Sah). In $\mathcal{P}(\mathbb{C})$ the following relation holds:

$$[z] = \left[ \frac{1}{1-z} \right] = \left[ 1 - \frac{1}{z} \right] = -\left[ \frac{1}{z} \right] = -\left[ \frac{z}{1-z} \right] = -[1-z]$$

This lemma allows us to extend the cross-ratio map $\sigma$ to the diagonals, i.e. to all tuples $z_0, z_1, z_2, z_3$ of complex numbers, not necessarily distinct, by simply setting $[z_0 : z_1 : z_2 : z_3] = 0$ if $z_i = z_j$ for some $i \neq j$. In this way, one can extend the cross-ratio isomorphism to a map

$$\xymatrix{ H_3\left[ C_\bullet(\mathbb{C}P^1)_G \right] \ar[r]^\sim \ar@{=>}[d] & \mathcal{P}(\mathbb{C}) \ar[ld]^\sigma \ar@{=>}[d] \\
H_3\left[ C_\#^\#(\mathbb{C}P^1)_G \right] }$$

Next, define $\gamma: C_3(G) \to C_3(\mathbb{C}P^1)$ by

$$(g_0, g_1, g_2, g_3) \mapsto (g_0 \cdot \infty, g_1 \cdot \infty, g_2 \cdot \infty, g_3 \cdot \infty)$$

Composing it with $\bar{\sigma}$ we get a map

$$\xymatrix{ H_3(G) \ar[r]^\sim \ar[d]_\lambda & H(C(G)_G) \ar[r]^\gamma \ar[d] & H_3(C(\mathbb{C}P^1)_G) \ar[d]_{\bar{\sigma}} \\
\mathcal{P}(\mathbb{C}) }$$

**Theorem 3.7.9** (Bloch–Wigner, Dupont–Sah). The image of $\lambda$ is precisely the Bloch group, and there is an exact sequence of groups

$$0 \to \mathbb{Q}/\mathbb{Z} \xrightarrow{i} H_3[SL_2(\mathbb{C})] \xrightarrow{\lambda} \mathcal{B}(\mathbb{C}) \to 0$$
Remark 3.7.10. If we identify (by localization) $\mathbb{Q}/\mathbb{Z} \simeq \operatorname{colim} \mathbb{Z}/n\mathbb{Z}$, the embedding $i$ is induced by $\mathbb{Z}/n\mathbb{Z} \hookrightarrow SL_2(\mathbb{C})$ defined by

$$1 \mapsto \begin{bmatrix} e^{2\pi i/n} & 0 \\ 0 & e^{-2\pi i/n} \end{bmatrix}$$

Then we have

$$H_3(\operatorname{colim} \mathbb{Z}/n\mathbb{Z}) \simeq \operatorname{colim} H_3(\mathbb{Z}/n\mathbb{Z}) \simeq \operatorname{colim} \mathbb{Z}/n\mathbb{Z} \simeq \mathbb{Q}/\mathbb{Z}$$

3.8 Relation to polylogarithms, and some conjectures

The classical $k$-logarithm is an analytic function on the unit disk $|z| < 1$ defined by

$$L_i^k(z) = \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} \frac{z^n}{n^k}$$

Note that $L_1^1(z) = -\log(1-z)$ and

$$z \frac{d}{dz} L_i^k(z) = L_i^{k-1}(z), \quad \forall k$$

We fix a choice of logarithm branch for $\log(1-z)$ once and for all. Using Equation 2.4 we can write

$$L_i^k(z) = \int_0^z L_i^{k-1}(z) \frac{dz}{z}$$

and continue $L_i^k(z)$ analytically to a multivalued function on $\mathbb{C}P^1 \setminus \{0,1,\infty\}$.

Definition 3.8.1 (Zagier,Goncharov). For $k \geq 1$ let $\tilde{L}_k(z)$ be

$$\tilde{L}_k(z) := \sum_{n=0}^{k-1} \frac{2^n B_n}{n!} \log^n |z| \cdot L_i^{k-n}(z)$$

Here $B_n$ denotes the $n$-th Bernoulli number. Then the modified $k$-logarithm $L_k(z)$ is defined as

$$L_k(z) = \begin{cases} \Re \left[ \tilde{L}_k(z) \right], & \text{if } k \text{ is odd} \\ \Im \left[ \tilde{L}_k(z) \right], & \text{if } k \text{ is even} \end{cases}$$

Theorem 3.8.2 (Zagier,Goncharov). For $k \geq 2$, $L_k(z)$ are single-valued continuous functions on $\mathbb{C}P^1$, and $L_2(z)$ satisfies the functional equation

$$L_2(x) - L_2(y) + L \left( \frac{y}{x} \right) - L_2 \left( \frac{1-x^{-1}}{1-y^{-1}} \right) + L_2 \left( \frac{1-x}{1-y} \right) = 0$$
In general, for any infinite field \( \mathbb{F} \) one defines abelian subgroups \( \mathcal{R}_k(\mathbb{F}) \subseteq \mathbb{Z}[\mathbb{F}^\times \setminus \{1\}] \) s.t. for \( \mathbb{F} = \mathbb{C} \), the map

\[
\mathbb{Z}[\mathbb{C} \setminus \{0, 1\}] \to \mathbb{R} \\
[z] \mapsto \mathcal{L}_k(z)
\]
is well-defined.

Let \( \mathcal{G}_k(\mathbb{F}) := \mathbb{Z}[\mathbb{F}^\times \setminus \{1\}] / \mathcal{R}_k(\mathbb{F}) \) and

\[
\mathcal{G}_* (\mathbb{F}) = \bigoplus_{n=1}^{\infty} \mathcal{G}_n(\mathbb{F}) \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}} \mathbb{Q}
\]

One can define a complex, called *Goncharov motivic complex* of the form

\[
G_* := \text{Tot} [\mathcal{G}_*(\mathbb{F}) \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}} \mathbb{Q} \to \Lambda^2_\mathbb{Q} \mathcal{G}_*(\mathbb{F}) \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}} \mathbb{Q} \to \Lambda^3_\mathbb{Q} \mathcal{G}_*(\mathbb{F}) \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}} \mathbb{Q} \to \ldots]
\]

**Conjecture 3.8.3** (Goncharov). \( \text{H}^{(n)}_i(G_*) \simeq \text{gr}_n^{\gamma} [K_{2n-i}(\mathbb{F})] \)

Above, \( \text{H}^{(n)}_i \) denotes the \( n \)-th weighted component of \( \text{H}_i \), where weights are coming from the grading on \( \mathcal{G}_*(\mathbb{F}) \). \( \gamma \) is a certain filtration on \( K_{2n-i}(\mathbb{F}) \).

### 4 Higher K-theory via Q-construction

#### 4.1 Exact categories

**Definition 4.1.1.** An exact category is an additive category \( \mathcal{C} \) equipped with a class \( \mathcal{E} \) of diagrams of the form \((i, p) := [c' \xrightarrow{i} c \xrightarrow{p} c'']\) for \( c, c', c'' \in \text{Ob}(\mathcal{C}) \). If \((i, p) \in \mathcal{E}\), we call \( i \) an admissible monic, and \( p \) an admissible epic. The class \( \mathcal{E} \) should satisfy the following axioms.

**(E1)** \( \mathcal{E} \) is closed under isomorphisms.

**(E2)** The set of admissible monics is closed under compositions and push-outs (cobase change) along arbitrary morphisms: if \( i: c \to c' \) is an admissible monic and \( f: c \to d \) is an arbitrary morphism,

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
c & \xrightarrow{i} & c' \\
\downarrow{f} & \swarrow{\tilde{i}} & \\
d & \xrightarrow{} & d \times_c c'
\end{array}
\]

then \( \tilde{i} \) is also an admissible monic.

**(E3)** The set of admissible epics is closed under compositions and pull-backs (base change) along arbitrary morphisms: if \( p: c \to c' \) is an admissible epic and \( f: d \to c' \) is an
arbitrary morphism,

\[ d \times c -\xrightarrow{\tilde{p}} - d \]
\[ \downarrow \quad \quad \quad \downarrow f \]
\[ c \xrightarrow{p} c' \]

then \( \tilde{p} \) is also an admissible epic.

(E4) Any diagram of the form \([c \hookrightarrow c \oplus d \rightarrow d]\) in \(\mathbf{C}\) necessarily belongs to \(\mathcal{E}\).

(E5) If \((i,p) \in \mathcal{E}\), then \(i = \text{Ker}(p)\) and \(p = \text{Coker}(i)\).

We will denote exact categories as pairs \((\mathbf{C}, \mathcal{E})\), often suppressing \(\mathcal{E}\) from the notation when it won’t cause any confusion.

**Definition 4.1.2.** A functor \(F: (\mathbf{C}, \mathcal{E}_\mathbf{C}) \to (\mathbf{D}, \mathcal{E}_\mathbf{D})\) between two exact categories is called exact if it sends \(\mathcal{E}_\mathbf{C}\) to \(\mathcal{E}_\mathbf{D}\).

### 4.2 K-group of an exact category

**Definition 4.2.1.** If \((\mathbf{C}, \mathcal{E})\) is an exact category, we define its Grothendieck group \(K_0(\mathbf{C}, \mathcal{E})\) by

\[ K_0(\mathbf{C}, \mathcal{E}) := \mathbb{Z}[\text{Iso}(\mathbf{C})] / \left( [c] = [c'] + [c''] \text{ for } [c' \to c \to c''] \text{ in } \mathcal{E} \right) \]

**Example 4.2.2.** Let \(\mathbf{A}\) be an abelian category. Then \(\mathbf{A}\) is an exact category with \(\mathcal{E}\) being the class of all short exact sequences. This is called the canonical exact structure on \(\mathbf{A}\).

**Warning:** there is another natural exact structure on \(\mathbf{A}\), where the class \(\mathcal{E}^{\text{split}}\) is taken to be the class of split exact sequences \(0 \to c \to c \oplus d \to d \to 0\). In general, \(K_0(\mathbf{A}, \mathcal{E}) \neq K_0(\mathbf{A}, \mathcal{E}^{\text{split}})\), unless there is a version of Krull-Schmidt theorem in \(\mathbf{A}\).

**Definition 4.2.3.** An exact category \((\mathbf{C}, \mathcal{E})\) is called split exact is \(\mathcal{E}\) consists of the diagram of the form \(0 \to c \to c \oplus d \to d \to 0\).

**Example 4.2.4.** Let \(A\) be a unital ring, and let \(\mathbf{C} = \mathbb{P}(A)\) be the category of finitely generated projective (right) \(A\)-modules. Take \(\mathcal{E}_\mathbb{P}\) to be the family of all short exact sequences \(\{0 \to p' \to p \to p'' \to 0\}\). The category \(\mathbf{C}\) is not abelian, but it is exact. Then \(K_0(A) = K_0(\mathbb{P}(A), \mathcal{E}_\mathbb{P})\).

**Example 4.2.5.** If \(X\) is a quasi-projective scheme, take \(\mathbf{C} = \mathbf{Vect}(X)\) to be the category of vector bundles on \(X\). Then by the definition, \(K^0(\mathbf{X}) = K_0(\mathbf{Vect}(X))\). Here \(K^0(\mathbf{X})\) is the Grothendieck ring of \(\mathbf{X}\) as opposed to \(K_0(\mathbf{X})\), which is the Grothendieck group of \(\mathbf{X}\) defined using coherent sheaves instead of vector bundles. However, in nice cases (when any coherent sheaf has a finite locally free resolution) the two are isomorphic.

**Example 4.2.6.** If \(\mathbf{C}\) is an exact category, then \(\mathbf{C}^{\text{op}}\) is also an exact category in a natural way, where admissible epics in \(\mathbf{C}^{\text{op}}\) correspond to admissible monics in \(\mathbf{C}\), and vice versa. Then

\[ K_0(\mathbf{C}) \simeq K_0(\mathbf{C}^{\text{op}}) \]
Example 4.2.7. If $C_1$ and $C_2$ are two exact categories, there is a natural structure of an exact category on their product $C_1 \times C_2$. We will denote the resulting exact category by $C_1 \oplus C_2$. Then there is a natural isomorphism of $K$-groups

$$K_0(C_1 \oplus C_2) \simeq K_0(C_1) \oplus K_0(C_2).$$

Example 4.2.8. Let $(C, \otimes)$ be any skeletally small symmetric monoidal category. Recall from the discussion after Example 3.2.8 that to $C$ we can associate a groupoid $\text{Iso}(C)$ of isomorphisms in $C$, and $\text{Iso}(C) := \pi_0[\text{Iso}(C)]$ is naturally an abelian monoid. We then define a group $K_0^\otimes(C)$ to be the group completion (see Section 2.1) of the monoid $S := \text{Iso}(C)$, i.e.

$$K_0^\otimes(C) = S^{-1}S, \text{ where } S = \text{Iso}(C).$$

Now, let $C$ be an additive category. Then it is also naturally a symmetric monoidal category, with the monoidal structure given by the direct sum $\oplus : C \times C \rightarrow C$. Therefore, we can consider the $K$-group $K_0^\otimes(C)$.

If in addition the category $C$ is also exact, then we have the associated group $K_0(C, \mathcal{E})$. In general, the two groups $K_0^\otimes(C)$ and $K_0(C, \mathcal{E})$ are not isomorphic, with $K_0(C, \mathcal{E})$ being naturally a quotient of $K_0^\otimes(C)$, depending on the choice of $\mathcal{E}$.

Lemma 4.2.9. Let $B$ be an exact subcategory of an exact category $C$. Assume that

1. $B$ is closed under extensions, i.e. if $0 \rightarrow b' \rightarrow c \rightarrow b \rightarrow 0$ is an exact sequence in $C$ with $b, b' \in \text{Ob}(B)$, then $c$ is also an object in $B$;

2. $B$ is cofinal in $C$ in the sense that for any $c \in \text{Ob}(C)$ there exists $c' \in \text{Ob}(C)$ such that $c \oplus c' \in \text{Ob}(B)$.

Then $K_0(B)$ is naturally a subgroup of $K_0(C)$.

Sketch of proof. First one checks that $K_0^\oplus(B) \subseteq K_0^\otimes(C)$ is a subgroup (exercise). Then we need to see that this embedding descends to the quotients $K_0(B) \rightarrow K_0(C)$.

If $[c_1 \hookrightarrow c \twoheadrightarrow c_2] \in \mathcal{E}_C$, choose $c_1', c_2' \in \text{Ob}(C)$ such that $b_1 := c_1 \oplus c_1' \in B$ and $b_2 := c_2 \oplus c_2' \in B$. Put $b = c_1' \oplus c \oplus c_2'$ in $C$ so that $[b_1 \hookrightarrow b \twoheadrightarrow b_2] \in \mathcal{E}_C$.

Therefore, since $B$ is closed under extensions, $b \in \text{Ob}(B)$, and so $[b_1 \hookrightarrow b \twoheadrightarrow b_2] \in \mathcal{E}_B$.

In $K_0^\otimes(C)$ we have $[c] - [c_1] - [c_2] = [b] - [b_1] - [b_2]$, and so

$$\text{Ker} \left[ K_0^\otimes(C) \rightarrow K_0(C) \right] = \text{Ker} \left[ K_0^\otimes(B) \rightarrow K_0(B) \right]$$

Thus $K_0(B)$ is a subgroup of $K_0(C)$. \qed

Remark 4.2.10. Our argument actually shows that

$$K_0(C)/K_0(B) \simeq K_0^\oplus(C)/K_0^\oplus(B)$$
4.3 Q-construction

Definition 4.3.1. Let \((C, E)\) be a skeletally small exact category. Then \(QC\) is a category with

\[
\text{Ob}(QC) = \text{Ob}(C),
\]

and \(\text{Hom}_{QC}(c, c')\) is the set of the diagrams, called “roofs,” of the form

\[
p \quad \downarrow \quad i \quad \downarrow \quad c' \quad \quad \quad d \quad \downarrow \quad i \quad \downarrow \quad c'
\]

where \(p\) is an admissible epic, and \(i\) is an admissible monic in \(C\), modulo the equivalence relation, where two roofs \([c \xleftarrow{p} d \xrightarrow{i} c']\) and \([c' \xleftarrow{p'} d' \xrightarrow{i'} c']\) are equivalent if there exists an isomorphism \(\varphi: d \xrightarrow{\sim} d'\) in \(C\) making the following diagram commute

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
     & d & \quad \downarrow \quad \varphi \\
\quad \quad & 
\end{array}
\]

The composition of two (equivalence classes of) roofs \([c \xleftarrow{p} d \xrightarrow{i} c']\) and \([c' \xleftarrow{p'} d' \xrightarrow{i'} c'']\) is defined to be the (equivalence class of) the roof

\[
p \quad \downarrow \quad \varphi \quad \downarrow \quad c' \quad \quad \quad p' \quad \downarrow \quad i' \quad \downarrow \quad c''
\]

In this diagram, \(d \times_{c'} d'\) is the pull-back of \(d'\) along \(i\).

Lemma 4.3.2. This composition is well-defined.

4.4 Some remarks on the Q-construction

There are two distinguished types of morphisms in \(QC\) corresponding to admissible monics and epics in \(C\):

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
     & d & \quad \downarrow \quad \varphi \\
\quad \quad & 
\end{array}
\]

We will denote them respectively by \([d \xleftarrow{i} c']\) and \([c \xleftarrow{p} d]\).
Notice that any roof \([c \xrightarrow{p} d \xhookrightarrow{i} c']\) \(\in \text{Mor}(Q\mathcal{C})\) can be decomposed (uniquely up to an isomorphism, in fact) as
\[
[c \xrightarrow{p} d \xhookrightarrow{i} c'] = [c \xrightarrow{p} d] \circ [d \xhookrightarrow{i} c']
\]

**Definition 4.4.1.** Let \(\mathcal{C}\) be any category, and let \(c \in \text{Ob}(\mathcal{C})\). A subobject of \(c\) is an equivalence class of monics \(d \hookrightarrow c\), two monics being equivalent if they factor through each other.

Let now \(\mathcal{C}\) be an exact category. A subobject \(d \hookrightarrow c\) of \(c \in \text{Ob}(\mathcal{C})\) is called admissible if it can be represented by an admissible monic.

By definition of morphisms in \(Q\mathcal{C}\), every morphism \([c \xleftarrow{d \rightarrow} c']\) defines a unique admissible monic \(d \hookrightarrow c\). If we fix a representative for each subobject in \(\mathcal{C}\), then a morphism \(c \rightarrow c'\) in \(Q\mathcal{C}\) is given by a pair \(d \hookrightarrow c'\), an admissible subobject in \(c'\), and an admissible epic \(d \twoheadrightarrow c\). Hence,

\[
\text{Hom}_{Q\mathcal{C}}(c, c') = \{\text{admissible subobjects of } c' \text{ in } \mathcal{C}\}
\]

Our next observation is the isomorphisms in \(Q\mathcal{C}\) are in one-to-one correspondence with isomorphisms in \(\mathcal{C}\). Indeed, every isomorphism \(i: c \xrightarrow{\sim} c'\) in \(\mathcal{C}\) gives an isomorphism in \(Q\mathcal{C}\) which is represented by either \([c \xleftarrow{i} c']\) or \([c \xrightarrow{i^{-1}} c']\). Every isomorphism in \(Q\mathcal{C}\) arises this way.

**Exercise 1.** There is another way to represent morphisms in \(Q\mathcal{C}\). Given a pair of admissible subobjects in \(\mathcal{C}\), \([c_1 \hookrightarrow c_2 \hookrightarrow c]\), the quotient \(c_2/c_1 \in \text{Ob}(\mathcal{C})\) is called an admissible subquotient of \(\mathcal{C}\). Then any morphism in \(Q\mathcal{C}\) can be represented by an isomorphism \(c_2/c_1 \xrightarrow{\sim} c'\) in \(\mathcal{C}\).

### 4.5 The \(K_0\)-group via \(Q\)-construction

Fix an exact skeletally small category \(\mathcal{C}\), and consider \(Q\mathcal{C}\), the \(Q\)-construction of \(\mathcal{C}\), and \(BQ\mathcal{C}\), the corresponding classifying space.

**Remark 4.5.1.** First observe the following.

1. If \(\mathcal{C}\) is skeletally small, then \(Q\mathcal{C}\) is also skeletally small, and so \(BQ\mathcal{C}\) is well-defined.
2. The space \(BQ\mathcal{C}\) has a canonical basepoint, given by the zero object \(0 \in \text{Ob}(\mathcal{C})\).
3. \(BQ\mathcal{C}\) is a connected space, where \([0 \hookrightarrow c]\) gives a path connecting any \(c \in \text{Ob}(\mathcal{C})\) with \(0 \in \text{Ob}(\mathcal{C})\). Therefore, \(\pi_0(Q\mathcal{C}) = \{\ast\}\) is trivial.

**Theorem 4.5.2.** There is an isomorphism \(K_0(\mathcal{C}) \simeq \pi_1(BQ\mathcal{C})\). Under this isomorphism, an element of \(\pi_1(BQ\mathcal{C})\) corresponding to a class \([c] \in K_0(\mathcal{C})\) is represented by the based loop in \(BQ\mathcal{C}\)
\[
[o \xrightarrow{c \rightarrow 0}] = [0 \xrightarrow{c}] \circ [c \rightarrow 0]
\]
Recall (see Proposition 3.5.2) that for a small (connected) category, if \( T \subset \text{Mor}(\mathcal{C}) \) is a maximal tree then \( \pi_1(\mathcal{B}\mathcal{C}, c_0) \) has presentation

\[
\pi_1(\mathcal{B}\mathcal{C}, c_0) \simeq \langle [f] \mid f \in \text{Mor}(\mathcal{C}) \rangle / R,
\]

where \( R \) is the normal subgroup generated by the relations

\[
\begin{align*}
[t] &= 1, \quad t \in T \\
[id_c] &= 1, \quad \forall c \in \text{Ob}(\mathcal{C}) \\
[f \circ g] &= [f] \cdot [g], \quad \forall f, g \in \text{Mor}(\mathcal{C}) \text{ composable}
\end{align*}
\]

A class of \( f : c_1 \to c_2 \) is represented by a unique path

\[
c_0 \leadsto c_1 \overset{f}{\to} c_2 \leadsto c_0
\]

where an arrow \( a \leadsto b \) denotes the unique path in \( T \) from the vertex \( a \) to the vertex \( b \).

**Proof of the theorem.** Let \( T \) be the family of all morphisms \([0 \hookrightarrow a] \in \text{Mor}(\mathcal{Q}\mathcal{C})\). Note that every vertex not equal to 0 occurs exactly once in \( T \). Hence \( T \) is a maximal tree, and so \( \pi_1(\mathcal{B}\mathcal{Q}\mathcal{C}) \) admits the following presentation:

\[
\pi_1(\mathcal{B}\mathcal{Q}\mathcal{C}) \simeq \langle [\text{Mor}(\mathcal{Q}\mathcal{C})] \rangle / S \tag{2.5}
\]

where the normal subgroup \( S \) of relations is generated by the relations

\[
\begin{align*}
[0 \hookrightarrow a] &= 1, \quad \forall a \in \mathcal{C} \\
[f] \cdot [g] &= [f \circ g], \quad \forall f, g \text{ composable}
\end{align*}
\]

If \([a \to b] \in \text{Mor}(\mathcal{Q}\mathcal{C})\), under the presentation (2.5) corresponds to the based loop

\[
0 \hookrightarrow a \to b \leftrightarrow 0
\]

Now, \([0 \leftrightarrow b' \hookrightarrow b] \in T\) implies that \([b' \hookrightarrow b] = 1\) in \( \pi_1(\mathcal{B}\mathcal{Q}\mathcal{C}) \) because \([0 \hookrightarrow b' \hookrightarrow b] = [0 \hookrightarrow b'] \circ [b' \hookrightarrow b] \). Hence,

\[
[a \leftrightarrow b' \hookrightarrow b] = [a \hookrightarrow b'] \text{ in } \pi_1(\mathcal{B}\mathcal{Q}\mathcal{C}) \tag{2.6}
\]

Similarly, \([0 \leftrightarrow a \hookrightarrow b] \in T\) yields the relation

\[
[0 \leftarrow a] \cdot [a \leftarrow b] = [0 \leftarrow b]
\]

so that

\[
[a \leftarrow b] = [0 \leftarrow a]^{-1} \cdot [0 \leftarrow b] \text{ in } \pi_1(\mathcal{B}\mathcal{Q}\mathcal{C})
\]

By the discussion in Section 4.4, we can conclude that \( \pi_1(\mathcal{B}\mathcal{Q}\mathcal{C}) \) is generated by the classes of morphisms \([0 \leftarrow a]\) in \( \mathcal{Q}\mathcal{C} \).
Now, let $[a \hookrightarrow b \to c] \in \mathcal{E}_C$ be an exact sequence in $C$. Then, in $QC$, we have

$$[0 \hookrightarrow c] \circ [c \hookleftarrow b] = [0 \hookrightarrow a \hookrightarrow b], \quad (2.7)$$

where $a$ is defined by the pull-back diagram defining the composition in $QC$.

Hence, in $\pi_1(BQC)$ we have

$$[0 \hookrightarrow b] = [0 \hookrightarrow c] \cdot [c \hookleftarrow b] = [0 \hookrightarrow c] \cdot [0 \hookrightarrow a \hookrightarrow b] = [0 \hookrightarrow c] \cdot [0 \hookrightarrow a] \quad (2.8)$$

which is the additivity relation. Since every relation $[f] \cdot [g] = [f \circ g]$ can be written in terms of the additivity relations (2.8), $\pi_1(BQC)$ is generated by $[0 \hookrightarrow a]$, with (2.8) being the only relation. It follows that

$$K_0(C) \simeq \pi_1(QBC) \tag*{\square}$$

It follows from the proof that the map $\text{Mor}(QC) \to K_0(C)$ inducing the isomorphism $\pi_1(BQC) \simeq K_0(C)$ is given by

$$[a \overset{p}{\hookrightarrow} b \overset{i}{\hookrightarrow} b] \mapsto [\ker(p)] \in K_0(C)$$

### 4.6 Higher K-theory

**Definition 4.6.1.** For a skeletally small exact category $C$ define its $K$-space by

$$K(C) = \Omega BQC,$$

where $\Omega$ denotes the based loop space functor. Then the $K$-groups $K_i(C)$ are defined to be

$$K_i(C) = \pi_i(\Omega BQC) \simeq \pi_{i+1}(\Omega BQC), \forall i \geq 0.$$

Theorem 4.5.2 implies that $K_0(C)$ defined using $Q$-construction agrees with the elementary definition.

If $F : C \to D$ is an exact functor between two exact categories, then $F$ gives a natural functor $QF : QC \to QD$ between the corresponding $Q$-constructions, which in turn induces a map $BQF : BQC \to BQD$, and hence homomorphisms

$$BQF_i : K_i(C) \to K_i(D)$$
Thus, if $\text{ExCat}$ denotes the category of all small exact categories, then we have natural functors

\[
K: \text{ExCat} \to \text{Spaces} \\
C \mapsto K(C)
\]

\[
K_i: \text{ExCat} \to \text{Ab} \\
C \mapsto K_i(C)
\]

**Example 4.6.2.** Let $A$ be an associative unital ring. Define $K_i(A) := K_i(\mathbb{P}(A))$ for all $i \geq 0$. For $i = 0$ this agrees with the classical definition.

**Theorem 4.6.3.** $K_i(A) \simeq \pi_i(K_0(A) \times BGL(A)^+)$, for all $i \geq 0$. In other words, for a ring $A$, the two $K$-theories defined using the plus- and $Q$-constructions agree.

*Proof.* This will follow from the general “$+ = Q$” theorem, see later. \hfill \square

### 4.7 Elementary properties

**Morita invariance**

If $A, B$ are two Morita equivalent rings, then $K_i(A) \simeq K_i(B)$ for $i \geq 0$. Recall that two rings are called *Morita invariant* if there exists a projective $A$-module $P$ such that $B \simeq \text{End}_A(P)$. Hence $P$ is a $(B, A)$-bimodule, and so $P^* := \text{Hom}_A(P, A)$ is naturally an $(A, B)$-bimodule.

Then the two categories $\text{Mod}(A)$ and $\text{Mod}(B)$ are equivalent, with the equivalence given by

\[
\text{Mod}(A) \to \text{Mod}(B) \\
M \mapsto M \otimes_A P^* \\
\text{Mod}(A) \leftarrow \text{Mod}(B) \\
N \otimes_B P \leftarrow N
\]

Since the categories $\text{Mod}(A)$ and $\text{Mod}(B)$ are equivalent, the corresponding categories of projectives $\mathbb{P}(A)$ and $\mathbb{P}(B)$ are also equivalent, and hence the K-spaces are also homotopy equivalent $K(A) \simeq K(B)$.

**Basic constructions**

If $C^{\text{op}}$ is the opposite category of $C$, then $QC^{\text{op}} \simeq (QC)^{\text{op}}$. By the properties of the classifying space functor $B$,

\[
B(\text{QC}^{\text{op}}) \simeq B(QC)^{\text{op}} \simeq BQC
\]

Therefore, there is an isomorphism of K-groups $K_i(C^{\text{op}}) \simeq K_i(C)$, for all $i \geq 0$. 70
If \( C \) and \( D \) are two exact categories, then \( C \oplus D \) is naturally an exact category. It is easy to see that \( Q(C \oplus D) \simeq QC \times QD \), and therefore

\[
BQ(C \oplus D) \simeq BQC \times BQD
\]

Taking homotopy groups of both sides, we get an isomorphism (cf. Example 4.2.7)

\[
K_i(C \oplus D) \simeq K_i(C) \oplus K_i(D), \quad \forall i \geq 0
\]

In particular, if we apply this result to the categories \( P(A) \) and \( P(B) \) for any two associative unital rings \( A, B \), we get an isomorphism

\[
K_i(A \times B) \simeq K_i(A) \oplus K_i(B), \quad \forall i \geq 0
\]

Another useful application is the K-theory of schemes. If \( X, Y \) are two quasi-projective schemes, then \( \text{Vect}(X \sqcup Y) \simeq \text{Vect}(X) \oplus \text{Vect}(Y) \), and so

\[
K_i(X \sqcup Y) \simeq K_i(X) \oplus K_i(Y), \quad \forall i \geq 0
\]

### 4.8 Quillen–Gersten Theorem

**Theorem 4.8.1** (Quillen–Gersten). Let \( C \) be an exact category, and \( B \subset C \) be an exact subcategory which is closed under extensions and is cofinal in \( C \) (see Lemma 4.2.9). Then the space \( BQB \) is homotopy equivalent to the covering space of \( BQC \) corresponding to the subgroup \( K_0(B) \simeq \pi_1(BQB) \subseteq K_0(C) \simeq \pi_1(BQC) \). In particular, \( K_i(B) \simeq K_i(C) \) for all \( i \geq 1 \).

**Sketch of proof.** We will consider only a special case which often arises in practice. Assume that \( C \) is an exact category equipped with a surjective group homomorphism \( \varphi: K_0(C) \to G \) for some (necessarily abelian) group \( G \). Define \( B \) to be the full subcategory of \( C \) consisting of all objects \( b \in \text{Ob}(C) \) such that \( \varphi([b]) = 0 \in G \). Assume in addition that \( B \) is cofinal in \( C \). Then we prove that \( K_i(B) \simeq K_i(C) \) for \( i \geq 1 \). This special case was first proved by Gersten.

**Step 1.** Consider \( G \), the group \( G \) viewed as a groupoid with one object \( \{*\} \). Define a functor \( F: QC \to G \) given by

\[
F\left(\left[\begin{array}{ccc} c & \xrightarrow{p} & d \\ \downarrow & \downarrow & \downarrow \\ & \downarrow & \downarrow \\ \overset{c'}{\rightarrow} & \rightarrow & \rightarrow \end{array}\right]\right) = \varphi([d']) \in G = \text{Mor}(G),
\]

where \( d' := \text{Ker}(p) \). Then the induced map \( F_*: \pi_1(QC) \simeq K_0(C) \to \pi_1(G) = G \) is just the original map \( \varphi \).

**Step 2.** For any \( g \in G = \text{Mor}(G) \), \( g \) is a morphism \( g: * \to * \), so we can consider the induced functor from the corresponding comma category to itself

\[
g: F/* \to F/*
\]

It is easy to see that this functor is a homotopy equivalence, with the homotopy inverse map induced by the functor associated to \( g^{-1} \).

71
Quillen’s theorem B then implies that $B(F/\ast)$ is the homotopy fiber of the map $BQC \to BG$.

**Step 3.** Let $F^{-1}(\ast)$ be the fibre category of $F$ over $\ast$ (see Definition 3.8.1), i.e. $F^{-1}(\ast)$ is the category with
\begin{align*}
\text{Ob}(F^{-1}(\ast)) &= \text{Ob}(QC) = \text{Ob}(C) \\
\text{Mor}(F^{-1}(\ast)) &= \{f \in \text{Mor}(QC) \mid F(f) = \text{id}_G\}
\end{align*}

There is a natural functor $\Phi: QB \to F^{-1}(\ast)$. Take any $d \in \text{Ob}(F^{-1}(\ast))$ and consider the corresponding comma category $\Phi/d$. Then $\Phi/d$ is contractible, and so by Quillen’s theorem A we have
$$B\Phi: BQB \sim B[F^{-1}(\ast)]$$
is a homotopy equivalence.

**Step 4.** If $B$ is cofinal, then the canonical functor $i: F^{-1}(\ast) \to F/\ast$ (see Section 3.8) has right adjoint. Therefore, $Bi$ is a homotopy equivalence:
$$Bi: BF^{-1}(\ast) \sim B[F/\ast]$$

**Step 5.** Combining Steps 2–4, we conclude that
$$BQB \xrightarrow{\sim} BF^{-1}(\ast) \xrightarrow{\sim} B(F/\ast) \to BQC \longrightarrow BG$$is a homotopy fibration sequence. Since $\pi_i(BG) = \begin{cases} G, & \text{if } i = 1 \\ 0, & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$, from the long exact sequence of homotopy groups we deduce
$$K_i(B) \simeq K_i(C), \forall i \geq 1$$

**5 The “plus = Q” Theorem**

The main goal of this section is the proof of the following famous theorem by Quillen.

**Theorem 5.0.1** (Quillen). For any associative unital ring $A$, there is a homotopy equivalence of the $K$-spaces
$$\Omega BQ \left[\mathcal{P}(A)\right] \simeq K_0(A) \times BGL(A)^+$$
Therefore, the $K$-groups defined using the plus- and $Q$-constructions are isomorphic,
$$K_i(A) \simeq K_i(\mathcal{P}(A)), \forall i \geq 0$$

The proof of this theorem is not direct. Rather, it proceeds in two steps, stated in the following two propositions. These two steps consist of comparison of both $Q$- and plus-constructions to the third construction, which we will explain in detail below. For now, let’s fix the two statements.
Proposition 5.0.2. Let \( C \) be a split exact category, and let \( S = \text{Iso}(C) \) be the category (groupoid) of all isomorphisms in \( C \). Then there is a homotopy equivalence of spaces 
\[
K(C) = \Omega BQC \simeq B(S^{-1}S),
\]
where \( B(S^{-1}S) \) is a “group completion” of the \( H \)-space \( BS \).

Proposition 5.0.3. If \( C = \mathbb{P}(A) \) is the category of finitely generated projective modules over a unital associative ring \( A \), then
\[
B(S^{-1}S) \simeq K_0(A) \times BGL(A)^+.
\]

5.1 The category \( S^{-1}S \)

Assume that \((S, \oplus)\) is a symmetric monoidal category, such that

1. \( S = \text{Iso}(S) \), i.e. \( S \) is a groupoid;
2. all translations in \( S \) are faithful. That is, for any \( s \in \text{Ob}(S) \), the homomorphism
   \[
s \oplus : \text{Aut}_S(t) \to \text{Aut}_S(s \oplus t) \quad u \mapsto \text{id}_s \oplus u
   \]
is injective.

Definition 5.1.1. Define a category \( S^{-1}S \) to be the category with objects
\[
\text{Ob}(S^{-1}S) := \text{Ob}(S) \times \text{Ob}(S)
\]
and the set of morphisms from \((m_1, m_2)\) to \((n_1, n_2)\) given by the set of compositions in \( S \)
\[
(s, f, g) : (m_1, m_2) \xrightarrow{(s \oplus m_1, s \oplus m_2)} (n_1, n_2)
\]
with \( s \in \text{Ob}(S) \), \( f \in \text{Hom}_S(s \oplus m_1, n_1) \) and \( g \in \text{Hom}_S(s \oplus m_2, n_2) \) modulo the following equivalence relation. The triples \((s, f, g)\) and \((s', f', g')\) are equivalent if there exists a morphism \( \alpha : s \sim s' \) in \( S \) such that \( \alpha \oplus \text{id}_{m_1} \) maps \( f' \) and \( g' \) to \( f \) and \( g \), respectively.

Remark 5.1.2. Since we assumed \( S \) to be groupoid, all maps \( f, g, \alpha \) in the definition above will be isomorphisms.

Remark 5.1.3. The category \( S^{-1}S \) satisfies the following properties.

1. Any (strict) monoidal functor \( S \to T \) induces a functor
   \[
   S^{-1}S \to T^{-1}T
   \]
2. There are two distinguished types of morphisms in $S^{-1}S$. Morphisms of the first type are

$$(f_1, f_2): (m_1, m_2) \to (n_1, n_2)$$

arising from the inclusion $S \times S \hookrightarrow S^{-1}S$. Morphisms of the second type are formal maps

$$s \oplus: (m, n) \to (s \oplus m, s \oplus n)$$

If in $S$ the transitions are faithful, i.e. the natural homomorphisms $\text{Aut}_S(t) \hookrightarrow \text{Aut}_S(s \oplus t)$ are injective, then any morphism in $S^{-1}S$ defines the triple $(s, f, g)$ in 2.9 uniquely up to unique isomorphism.

3. The category $S^{-1}S$ is symmetric monoidal, with the monoidal product given by

$$(m_1, m_2) \oplus (n_1, n_2) := (m_1 \oplus n_1, m_2 \oplus n_2),$$

and the natural inclusion $S \hookrightarrow S^{-1}S$ sending $m \mapsto (m, e)$ is a monoidal functor.

4. The induced map of the classifying spaces $BS \to B(S^{-1}S)$ is a morphism of $H$-spaces. The induced map $\pi_0(BS) \to \pi_0(B(S^{-1}S))$ is a map of abelian monoids, with $\pi_0(B(S^{-1}S))$ being an abelian group. Indeed, $[(m, n)]^{-1} = [(n, m)]$ because $\exists \eta \in \text{Mor}(S^{-1}S)$,

$$\eta: e \to (m, n) \oplus (n, m) = (m \oplus n, n \oplus m) \simeq (m \oplus n, m \oplus n)$$

given by $\eta = (m \oplus n) \oplus$. Note that $\eta$ is not a natural transformation $0 \Rightarrow id \oplus \tau$ for $0$ the constant functor $S^{-1}S \to S^{-1}S$ sending all the objects to the unit object $e$, and $\tau: S^{-1}S \to S^{-1}S$ sending $(m, n)$ to $(n, m)$.

5.2 K-groups of a symmetric monoidal groupoid

Let $(S, \oplus)$ be a symmetric monoidal category with $S = \text{Iso}(S)$.

**Definition 5.2.1.** For every $i \geq 0$ define

$$K_i^\oplus(S) := \pi_i [B(S^{-1}S)]$$

**Lemma 5.2.2.** The group $K_0^\oplus(S) := \pi_0(S^{-1}S)$ is the group completion of the abelian monoid $\pi_0(S)$.

**Proof.** Let $\widehat{\pi_0(S)}$ be the group completion of the abelian monoid $\pi_0(S)$. Define a map

$$\varphi: \text{Ob}(S^{-1}S) = \text{Ob}(S) \times \text{Ob}(S) \to \widehat{\pi_0(S)}$$

$$\quad (m, n) \mapsto [m] - [n]$$

74
If \( s \in \text{Ob}(S) \) is an object of \( S \) and \( f_1, f_2 \in \text{Mor}(S) \) are two morphisms in \( S \), \( f_i : m_i \to n_i \), giving a morphism \([s, f_1, f_2] \in \text{Mor}(S^{-1}S)\), then
\[
\varphi(n_1, n_2) = [n_1] - [n_2] \\
= [s \oplus m_1] - [s \oplus m_2] \\
= [m_1] - [m_2] \\
= \varphi(m_1, m_2).
\]
Thus \( \varphi \) induces a map \( \overline{\varphi} \),
\[\overline{\varphi} : \pi_0(S^{-1}S) \to \widehat{\pi_0(S)}\]
which is the inverse of the universal map.

5.3 Some facts about H-spaces

Recall that by an H-space \((X, \mu, e)\) we mean a topological space \(X\) together with a multiplication map \( \mu : X \times X \to X \) and a distinguished point \( e \in X \) such that \( \mu(x, e) = \mu(e, x) = x, \forall x \in X \). The point \( e \) is called the unit. We will often suppress \( e, \mu \) from the notation, and will simply refer to the H-space \(X\).

We say that \(X\) is homotopy associative, or simply associative, if the following diagram commutes up to homotopy:
\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
X \times X \times X & \xrightarrow{\mu \times \text{id}} & X \times X \\
\mu \times \text{id} \downarrow & & \downarrow \mu \\
X \times X & \xrightarrow{\mu} & X
\end{array}
\]

We say that \(X\) is homotopy commutative, or simply commutative, if the two maps \( \mu \circ \tau \sim \mu \) are homotopic, where \( \tau : X \times X \to X \times X \) is the map \( \tau(x, y) = (y, x) \).

Example 5.3.1. Topological groups are H-spaces. They are strictly associative.

Example 5.3.2. If \(S\) is a symmetric monoidal category, then the classifying space \( BS\) is a (homotopy) associative and (homotopy) commutative H-space.

Let \(X\) be an associative and commutative H-space. Then \(\pi_0(X)\) is naturally an abelian monoid. Moreover, \(H_0(X, \mathbb{Z}) = \mathbb{Z}[\pi_0(X)]\) is the monoid ring, and
\[
H_\bullet(X, \mathbb{Z}) = \bigoplus_{i \geq 0} H_i(X, \mathbb{Z})
\]
is an associative commutative graded \(\mathbb{Z}[\pi_0(X)]\)-algebra.

Remark 5.3.3. Let \(k\) be a field. Then \(H_\bullet(X, k)\) is a graded bialgebra with the comultiplication \(\Delta\) induced by the diagonal inclusion \(X \xrightarrow{\text{diag}} X \times X\), multiplication is induced by the H-space multiplication \(\mu : X \times X \to X\). The counit of \(H_\bullet(X, k)\) is induced by the projection \(X \to \{e\}\), and the unit induced by \(\eta : \{e\} \to X\).
**Definition 5.3.4.** An associative $H$-space $X$ is called group-like if there exists a map $\text{in}: X \to X$ such that both maps

$$
\begin{align*}
X \xrightarrow{\text{in} \times \text{id}} X \times X &\xrightarrow{\mu} X \\
X \xrightarrow{\text{id} \times \text{in}} X \times X &\xrightarrow{\mu} X
\end{align*}
$$

are homotopic to the identity map $\text{id}_X: X \to X$.

Note that if and $H$-space $X$ is group-like, then $\pi_0(X)$ is naturally a group. Conversely,

**Theorem 5.3.5** ([Whi78][Ch.X,2.2]). If an $H$-space $X$ is a CW complex, then $\pi_0(X)$ is a group if and only if $X$ is group-like.

**Example 5.3.6.** If $S = \text{Iso}(S)$ is a symmetric monoidal groupoid, then $BS$ is group-like if and only if $\pi_0(S)$ is a group.

**Definition 5.3.7.** Let $X$ be a homotopy associative and commutative $H$-space. A group completion of $X$ is a morphism $f: X \to \hat{X}$ such that

1. the induced map $\pi_0(f): \pi_0(X) \to \pi_0(\hat{X})$ is a group completion of $\pi_0(X)$;

2. for any commutative ring $k$, the map of graded commutative $\mathbb{Z}[\pi_0(X)]$-algebras $f_*: H_*(X,k) \to H_*(\hat{X},k)$ induces an isomorphism

$$
H_*(X,k) \xrightarrow{f_*} H_*(\hat{X},k) \xrightarrow{\cong} H_*(X,k)[\pi_0(X)^{-1}]
$$

**Remark 5.3.8.** If $X$ is a CW complex (such as, for example, $X = BS$) then we can (and will) assume that $\hat{X}$ is also a CW complex. Then by Theorem 5.3.5 and by the first axiom of Definition 5.3.7, $\hat{X}$ is necessarily group-like.

**Lemma 5.3.9.** Any group-like $H$-space $X$ is its own group completion, i.e. $\text{id}: X \to X$ is a group completion of $X$. Any group completion of a group completion $f: X \to \hat{X}$ is a homotopy equivalence.

**Proof.** The first statement is obvious. The map $f$ is homology equivalence by the second axiom in the Definition 5.3.7. Hence $f_*$ is an isomorphism on $\pi_0$ and $\pi_1$. Therefore, the map of basepoint components is a “$+$”-constriction (cf. see Definition 3.2.1) with respect to the trivial subgroup $\{1\} \subset \pi_1(X)$. By the homotopy uniqueness of “$+$”-constriction (see Theorem 3.2.2), $X \simeq \hat{X}$.
5.4 Actions on categories

**Definition 5.4.1.** We say that a monoidal category $(S, \oplus)$ acts on a category $X$ by a functor $\oplus: S \times X \to X$ if for any $s, t \in \text{Ob}(S)$ and $x \in \text{Ob}(X)$ there exist natural isomorphisms

\[
s \oplus (t \oplus x) \simeq (s \oplus t) \oplus x
\]

\[
e \oplus x \simeq x
\]

satisfying certain (obvious) coherence conditions.

**Example 5.4.2.** Category $S$ acts on itself via the monoidal structure functor $\oplus: S \times S \to S$.

**Example 5.4.3.** If $X$ is a discrete category, then $S$ acts on $X$ if and only if $\pi_0(S)$ acts on $\text{Ob}(X)$.

The following is analogous to the construction of the translation category, see Example 3.3.4.

**Definition 5.4.4.** Let $S$ and $X$ be two categories as above, and assume $S$ acts on the category $X$ by a functor $\oplus$. Define a category $S \ltimes X$ with objects $\text{Ob}(S \ltimes X) = \text{Ob}(X)$ and morphisms

\[
\text{Hom}_{S \ltimes X}(x, y) = \{(s, \varphi) \mid s \in \text{Ob}(S), \varphi \in \text{Mor}_X(s \oplus x, y)\}/\sim
\]

where $(s, \varphi) \sim (s', \varphi')$ if there exists $\alpha: s \sim s'$ an isomorphism in $S$ making the following diagram commute:

\[
s \oplus x \xrightarrow{\alpha \oplus \text{id}_x} s' \oplus x
\]

\[
\varphi \quad \varphi'
\]

**Definition 5.4.5.** Define $S^{-1}X := S \ltimes (S \times X)$, where $S$ acts on $S \times X$ diagonally.

**Example 5.4.6.** If $X = S$, then $S^{-1}X$ coincides with the category defined in the Section 5.1.

If $S$ is a symmetric monoidal category, then we define an action of $S$ on $S^{-1}X$ by the formula

\[
S \times S^{-1}X \to S^{-1}X
\]

\[
s \oplus (t, x) := (s \oplus t, x)
\]

**Definition 5.4.7.** We say that $S$ acts on $X$ homotopy invertibly if every translation functor $s\oplus: X \to X$, $x \mapsto s \oplus x$ is a homotopy equivalence.
Example 5.4.8. If $S$ acts on $X$, then the corresponding action of $S$ on $S^{-1}X$ is homotopy invertible. Indeed, for any $s \in \text{Ob}(S)$ the translation functor $F_s: S^{-1}X \to S^{-1}X$, $F_s(t,x) := (s \oplus t, x)$ has a homotopy inverse functor $G_s: S^{-1}X \to S^{-1}X$ given by

$$G_s(t,x) := (t, s \oplus X)$$

To see that $G_s$ gives a homotopy inverse to $F_s$, notice that there is a natural transformation $\text{id}_{S^{-1}X} \Rightarrow F_s \circ G_s$ given by

$$(t,x) \mapsto (s \oplus t, s \oplus x)$$

Having a natural transformation between two functors implies that they are homotopy equivalent, see Lemma 3.2.1. (So $F_s$ is left inverse to $G_s$. Why is it also a right inverse??)

If $S$ is a symmetric monoidal category, $\pi_0(S)$ is a multiplicatively cosed subset of

$$H_0(S) = H_0(BS, \mathbb{Z}) = \mathbb{Z}[\pi_0(S)]$$

If $S$ acts on $X$, then $H_0(S)$ acts on $H_0(X) = H_0(BX, \mathbb{Z})$ and acts invertibly on $H_i(S^{-1}X)$. Hence the functor $X \to S^{-1}X$ sending $x \mapsto (e, x)$ induces a map

$$H_i(X) [\pi_0(S)^{-1}] \to H_i(S^{-1}X), \forall i \geq 0 \quad (2.10)$$

Theorem 5.4.9 (Quillen). Let $S$ be a symmetric monoidal category satisfying

1. $S = \text{Iso}(S)$;
2. all translations in $S$ are faithful.

Then the maps 2.10 are isomorphisms for all $X$ and all $i \geq 0$. In particular, $B(S^{-1}S)$ is a group completion of the $H$-space $BS$.

Sketch of proof. We will outline the basic steps of the proof. Step 1. Consider the category $S \ltimes S$. Recall that this is the category with objects $\text{Ob}(S \ltimes S) = \text{Ob}(S)$ and morphisms given by

$$\text{Hom}_{S \ltimes S}(x, x') = \{(s, \varphi) \mid s \in \text{Ob}(S), \varphi \in \text{Hom}_S(s \oplus x, x')\} / \sim$$

where $(s, \varphi) \sim (s', \varphi')$ if there exists $\alpha: s \to s'$ a morphism in $S$ making the following diagram commute

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
s \oplus x & \xrightarrow{\alpha \oplus \text{id}_x} & s' \oplus x \\
\varphi & & \varphi'
\end{array}$$

Note that if $S = \text{Iso}(S)$, the category $S^{-1}S$ is contractible, because it has initial object $e \in \text{Ob}(S) = \text{Ob}(S^{-1}X)$. So $BS \ltimes S \simeq \{e\}$.

Step 2. There is a natural projection functor

$$F: S^{-1}X \to S \ltimes S$$

$$(s,x) \mapsto s$$
Lemma 5.4.10. If \( S \) satisfies the two conditions of the theorem, the projection functor \( F \) is cofibred, with fibre over \( s \in \text{Ob}(S \times S) = \text{Ob}(S) \) being \( X_s = X \).

We recall (see Section 3.8) that a functor \( F : C \to D \) is called cofibred if for any \( d \in \text{Ob}(D) \) the inclusion \( j_* : F^{-1}(d) \hookrightarrow F/d \) has a left adjoint functor \( j^* : F/d \to F^{-1}(d) \) (and so \( BF^{-1}(d) \cong B(F/d) \)) and the cobase change \( f_* : F^{-1}(d) \to F^{-1}(d') \) respects composition: \((fg)_* = f_*g_* \) for any composable \( f : d \to d' \) and \( g : d' \to d'' \).

Step 3.

Lemma 5.4.11. If \( F : C \to D \) is a cofibred functor, there is a first quadrant homological spectral sequence

\[
E^2_{pq} = H_p(D, H_q F^{-1}) \Rightarrow H_{p+q}(C, \mathbb{Z}),
\]

where the homology of \( D \) is taken with the coefficients in the functor \( H_q F^{-1} : D \to \text{Ab} \)

\[
d \mapsto H_q(F^{-1}(d), \mathbb{Z})
\]

Proof of the Lemma. This spectral sequence is associated with the first quadrant bicomplex \( \{M_{pq}\}_{p,q \geq 0} \) with

\[
M_{pq} = \mathbb{Z} \{(d_p \to \cdots \to d_0 \to F(c_0), c_0 \to \cdots \to c_q)\}
\]

being the free abelian group spanned by all sequences of composable maps in \( D \) and \( C \) (cf. proof of Proposition 3.7.8).

Recall that if \( \{M_{pq}\}_{p,q \geq 0} \) is a (first quadrant) bicomplex, we have two (convergent) spectral sequences converging to \( H_*[\text{Tot}(M)] \):

\[
^I E^2_{pq} = H'_p H''_{pq}(M)
\]

\[
^II E^2_{pq} = H''_q H'_{qp}(M)
\]

In \( ^I E^2_{pq} \), we first take homology of \( p \)-th column and then homology of rows. In \( ^II E^2_{pq} \), we first take homology of \( q \)-th row, and then homology of columns.

Exercise 1. Check that in our case \( ^II E^2_{pq} \) degenerates giving

\[
H_q(C, \mathbb{Z}) = H_q(BC, \mathbb{Z}) \cong H_q(\text{Tot}(M))
\]

The spectral sequence \( ^I E^2_{pq} \) becomes the sequence of the lemma. \( \square \)

Step 4. Apply Lemma 5.4.11 to the functor of Lemma 5.4.10. This gives a convergent spectral sequence

\[
E^2_{pq} = H_p(S \times S, H_q(X_s)) \Rightarrow H_{p+q}(S^{-1}X)
\]

(2.11)

Let \( H_q(X_s)^{\text{loc}} := H_q(X_s)[\pi_0(S)^{-1}] \). Since the localization at multiplicatively closed subsets is an exact functor, localizing 2.11 yields

\[
(E^2_{pq})^{\text{loc}} = H_p(S \times S, H_q(X_s)^{\text{loc}}) \Rightarrow H_{p+q}(S^{-1}X)^{\text{loc}} \cong H_{p+q}(S^{-1}X)
\]

(2.12)
where the last isomorphism follows from the fact that \(H_0(S) = \mathbb{Z}[[\pi_0(S)]]\) acts on \(H_{p+q}(S^{-1}X)\) invertibly.

Now, the functor

\[
S \times S \to \text{Ab} \quad s \mapsto H_q(X_s)^{\text{loc}}
\]

is morphism invertible (local system) on the contractible (by Step 1) space \(B(S \times S)\). Hence

\[
H_p(S \times S, H_q(X_s)^{\text{loc}}) \simeq \begin{cases} 
0, & p \neq 0 \\
H_q(X_s)^{\text{loc}}, & p = 0
\end{cases}
\]

Thus, the spectral sequence 2.12 degenerates giving the required isomorphism

\[
H_q(X)[\pi_0(S)^{-1}] \to H_q(S^{-1}X), \quad \forall q \geq 0
\]

5.5 Application to “plus”-construction

Let \(A\) be an associative unital ring. Consider the full subcategory \(\mathcal{F}(A) \subseteq \mathcal{F}(A)\) consisting of finitely generated free modules. In what follows, assume that the ring \(A\) satisfies invariant basis property (IBP), that is, if two modules \(A^m \simeq A^n\) are isomorphic, then \(m = n\).

Let \(\text{Iso}(\mathcal{F}(A))\) be the associated groupoid. Because \(A\) satisfies IBP, the category \(\text{Iso}(\mathcal{F}(A))\) is equivalent to the category \(S\) with \(\text{Ob}(S) = \{0, A, A^2, \ldots\} \simeq \mathbb{N}\), and

\[
\text{Hom}_S(n, m) = \begin{cases} 
\emptyset, & n \neq m \\
GL_n(A), & n = m
\end{cases}
\]

In other words, \(S = \bigsqcup_{n \geq 0} GL_n(A)\), and so

\[
BS = \bigsqcup_{n \geq 0} BGL_n(A)
\]

Note that \(S\) has a natural monoidal structure given by \(A^n \oplus A^m = A^{m+n}\) on objects and

\[
\alpha \oplus \beta = \begin{bmatrix} \alpha & 0 \\ 0 & \beta \end{bmatrix} \in GL_{n+m}(A)
\]

for \(\alpha \in GL_n(A), \beta \in GL_m(A)\).

**Theorem 5.5.1** (Quillen). If \(S \bigsqcup_{n \geq 0} GL_n(A)\), then the K-space \(K^\oplus(S) = B(S^{-1}S)\) is the group completion of \(BS \simeq \bigcup_{n \geq 0} BGL_n(A)\), and in fact we have

\[
B(S^{-1}S) \simeq \mathbb{Z} \times BGL(A)^+
\]
Proof. The proof is based on Theorem 5.4.9 and Quillen’s Recognition Criterion 3.3.3, which says that the map $BGL(A)^+ \to BGL(A)^+$ is universal among all maps $f: BGL(A) \to H$ to H-spaces $H$.

**Lemma 5.5.2.** If for a map $f: BGL(A) \to H$ the induced map $f_*: H_*(BGL(A), \mathbb{Z}) \xrightarrow{\sim} H_*(H, \mathbb{Z})$ is an isomorphism, then $f$ is an acyclic map, and the induced map

$$\overline{f}: BGL(A)^+ \xrightarrow{\sim} H$$

is a homotopy equivalence.

**Proof of Lemma.** The proof follows immediately from the following standard result from homotopy theory.

**Proposition 5.5.3 ([Whi78][Ch.IV]).** If $X,Y$ are H-spaces having the homotopy type of CW complexes, then any map $f: X \to Y$ inducing an isomorphism on homology

$$f_*: H_*(X, \mathbb{Z}) \xrightarrow{\sim} H_*(Y, \mathbb{Z})$$

is a homotopy equivalence.

For the proof of the proposition, one first shows that $\pi_1(Y)$ acts trivially on the homotopy fiber $Ff$. Then by Relative Hurewicz Theorem one concludes that $\pi_* (Ff) = 0$. Hence $\pi_i(f)$ are isomorphisms for all $i$. Since $X,Y$ are CW complexes, Whitehead’s Theorem implies that $f$ is a homotopy equivalence.

To apply Theorem 5.4.9 we need to construct a map $f: BGL(A) \to Y_S$, where $Y_S$ is the connected component of the identity (basepoint) of $B(S^{-1}S)$, which satisfies the assumption of Lemma 5.5.2 (for $H = Y_S$).

For each $n \geq 1$, we have natural group homomorphisms

$$\eta_n: GL_n(A) = \text{Aut}_S(A^n) \to \text{Aut}_{S^{-1}S}(A^n, A^n)$$

given by $g \mapsto (g,1)$. These homomorphisms fit into the following commutative diagram

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
GL_n(A) & \xrightarrow{\eta_n} & \text{Aut}_{S^{-1}S}(A^n, A^n) \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
GL_{n+1}(A) & \xrightarrow{\eta_{n+1}} & \text{Aut}_{S^{-1}S}(A^{n+1}, A^{n+1})
\end{array}
$$

where $A\oplus$ and $(A,A)\oplus$ are translation maps in $S$ and $S^{-1}S$, corresponding to the objects $A \in \text{Ob}(S)$ and $(A,A) \in \text{Ob}(S^{-1}S)$. 

81
The commutativity of the above diagram can be interpreted by saying that there is a sequence of functors

\[
\begin{array}{ccccccc}
\vdots & & & & & & \\
& GL_n(A) & \xrightarrow{\eta_n} & S^{-1}S & \\
A \oplus & GL_{n+1}(A) & \xrightarrow{\eta_{n+1}} & B(S^{-1}S) & \\
& GL_{n+2}(A) & \xrightarrow{\eta_{n+2}} & \\
& \vdots & & & & & \\
\end{array}
\]

and natural transformations \( \eta_n \Rightarrow \eta_{n+1} \circ (A \oplus) \) which induces a homotopy commutative diagram of spaces

\[
\begin{array}{ccccccc}
\vdots & & & & & & \\
& BGL_n(A) & \xrightarrow{B\eta_n} & B(S^{-1}S) & \\
A \oplus & BGL_{n+1}(A) & \xrightarrow{B\eta_{n+1}} & \\
& \vdots & & & & & \\
\end{array}
\]

Here we, as usual, think of the groups \( GL_n(A) \) as one-object categories. In the inductive limit, we get a well-defined map

\[
BGL(A) = \text{colim}_n BGL_n(A) \xrightarrow{\eta} B(S^{-1}S)
\]

It is easy to see that \( \eta \) lands, in fact, in the connected component \( Y_S \) of the identity in \( B(S^{-1}S) \), i.e.

\[
\eta: BGL(A) \to B(S^{-1}S)
\]

Since \( B(S^{-1}S) \) is an H-space, so is its identity connected component \( Y_S \). Hence, to apply Lemma 5.5.2, we need to show that \( \eta \) induces a homology isomorphism \( \eta_*: H_* (BGL(A)) \xrightarrow{\sim} H_* (Y_S) \).

Let \( a = [A] \in \pi_0(BO) = \pi_0(S) \) denote the class of \( A \in \text{Ob}(S) \). By Theorem 5.4.9, we have

\[
H_*[B(S^{-1}S)] \simeq H_*(BS)[\pi_0(S)^{-1}]
\]
But \( \pi_0(S) = \{a^n\}_{n \geq 0} \) is generated by \( a \), so that \( H_0(S) = \mathbb{Z}[\pi_0(S)] \cong \mathbb{Z}[a, a^{-1}] \). The localization in the RHS of the above equation is given then by the inductive limit:

\[
H_\bullet(BS) \left[ \pi_0(S)^{-1} \right] = \text{colim} \left\{ H_\bullet(BS) \xrightarrow{a} H_\bullet(BS) \xrightarrow{a} \ldots \right\}
\]

where the maps are induced by the translation functor \( A \oplus : S \rightarrow S \). Hence, we have

\[
H_\bullet(B(S^{-1}S)) \cong \text{colim} \left\{ H_\bullet(BS) a \rightarrow H_\bullet(BS) a \rightarrow \ldots \right\}
\]

and \( H_\bullet(Y_S) \cong \text{colim}_n H_\bullet(BGL_n(A)) \cong H_\bullet(BGL(A)) \). The latter isomorphism implies that \( f : BGL(A) \rightarrow Y_S \) is a homology equivalence. By Lemma 5.5.2, it induces a homotopy equivalence

\[
\overline{f} : BGL(A)^+ \cong Y_S
\]

which implies the theorem. \( \square \)

**Remark 5.5.4.** A similar argument works for other categories \( S \). For example, let \( S := \text{Iso(\text{Fin})} \cong \bigsqcup_{n \geq 0} S_n \) (the groupoid of finite sets). The transition functor \( \{1\} : S \rightarrow S \) yields the inclusion \( S_n \hookrightarrow S_{n+1} \) of symmetric groups (similar to \( GL_n \hookrightarrow GL_{n+1} \)) and these assemble together to give

\[
BS_\infty \rightarrow B(S^{-1}S)
\]

where \( S_\infty = \text{colim}_n S_n \) is the infinite symmetric group. The above arguments show that

\[
B(S^{-1}S) = K_\oplus(\text{Iso(\text{Fin})}) \cong \mathbb{Z} \times BS_\infty^+.
\]

**Theorem 5.5.5** (Barratt–Priddy–Quillen–Segal). There are isomorphisms of groups \( K_i(\text{Iso(\text{Iso})}) \cong \pi^s_i(S) \), where \( \pi^s_i(S) := \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \pi_i + n(S^n) \) are the stable homotopy groups of spheres.

### 5.6 Proving the “plus=Q” theorem

Theorem 5.5.1 provides one step of proving the “plus=Q” construction, showing “\( S^{-1}S \)” part. What is left is to show that “\( Q = S^{-1}S \)”. This will follow from the following more general result of Quillen.

**Theorem 5.6.1** (Quillen). Let \( C \) be a split exact category, and let \( S = \text{Iso}(C) \) be the groupoid of isomorphisms in \( C \). Then

\[
\Omega BQC \cong B(S^{-1}S)
\]

Hence, \( K_i(C) \cong K_i^\oplus(S) \) for all \( i \geq 0 \).

This section will be devoted to proving this theorem. The idea of the proof goes as follows. Instead of constructing the equivalence 2.13 directly, we will construct a homotopy fibration sequence of spaces

\[
B(S^{-1}S) \rightarrow E \rightarrow BQC
\]

with the space \( E \) being contractible. The space \( E \) will be obtained in the form \( E = B(S^{-1}X) \) where \( S^{-1}X := S \times (S \times X) \) arises from an action of \( S, \oplus \) on a certain category \( X \). This category \( X = \text{Ex}(C) \) is the category of exact diagrams (sequences) in \( C \).
Remark 5.6.2. The construction of $\text{Ex}(C)$ generalizes the construction of the category of exact sequences $\text{Ex}(A)$ of an abelian category $A$, see [BMP14, Sect.4.14] (but the use of $\text{Ex}(C)$ is different). It will be convenient for the construction of $\text{Ex}(C)$ to give a more concrete characterization of exact categories in terms of abelian categories and (honest) exact sequences (like in [BMP14]).

Theorem 5.6.3 (see [BMP14]). If $(C,E)$ is an exact category, there is an embedding, i.e. a fully faithful additive functor, $C \hookrightarrow A$ of $C$ into an abelian category $A$ such that

1. $[a \hookrightarrow b \rightarrow c] \in E$ if and only if $0 \rightarrow a \rightarrow b \rightarrow c \rightarrow 0$ is a SES in $A$;
2. $C$ is closed under extensions in $A$. In other words, if $0 \rightarrow a \rightarrow b \rightarrow c \rightarrow 0$ is a SES in $A$, and $a, c \in \text{Ob}(C)$, then necessarily $b \in \text{Ob}(C)$ and $[a \hookrightarrow b \rightarrow c] \in E$.

For an exact category $C$ we define $\text{Ex}(C)$ to be the category having

$$\text{Ob}(\text{Ex}(C)) = E = \text{the set of admissible exact diagrams } [a \hookrightarrow b \rightarrow c] \text{ in } C$$

If $E = [a \hookrightarrow b \rightarrow c]$ and $E' = [a' \hookrightarrow b' \rightarrow c']$ are objects in $\text{Ex}(C)$, we define a morphism $f : E \rightarrow E'$ in $\text{Mor}(\text{Ex}(C))$ to be an equivalence class of diagrams of the form

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
E' : \quad \begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{ccc}
a' \hookrightarrow & b' & \rightarrow & c' \\
\alpha & & & \beta \\
a \hookrightarrow & b & \rightarrow & c
\end{array}
\end{array}
\end{array}

\begin{array}{c}
f
\end{array}
\end{array}
\]

where the rows are exact. The equivalence relation is given by an isomorphism of such diagrams in $C$, which is identity at all vertices except (possibly) fo the vertex $c''$. The composition is defined by pull-backs (resp. push-outs) of admissible epics (resp. monics).

Note that the rightmost column represents represents a morphism $\varphi(f) = [c' \hookrightarrow c'' \rightarrow c] \in \text{Hom}_{QC}(c', c)$ in $QC$. Assigning $f \mapsto \varphi(f)$ gives a functor

$$\varphi : \text{Ex}(C) \rightarrow QC$$

$[a \hookrightarrow b \rightarrow c] \mapsto c$

For an object $c \in \text{Ob}(QC) = \text{Ob}(C)$, we denote

$$\mathcal{E}_c := \varphi^{-1}(c),$$

the fiber category of $\varphi$. Recall, see 3.8.1, that by definition

$$\text{Ob}(\mathcal{E}_c) := \{ E \in \text{Ob}(\text{Ex}(C)) \mid \varphi(E) = c \}$$

$$\text{Mor}(\mathcal{E}_c) := \{ f \in \text{Mor}(\text{Ex}(C)) \mid \varphi(f) = \text{id}_c \}$$

84
A morphism in $\mathcal{E}_c$ is represented by a diagram

$$
\begin{array}{c}
a' \\ \downarrow \alpha \\ a' \\ \uparrow \beta \\ a \\ \downarrow \\ b \\ \downarrow \beta \\ b \\ \downarrow \alpha \\ a \\ \downarrow \\ c \\
\end{array}
$$

which we will denote, for notational brevity, as

$$
\begin{array}{c}
a' \Rightarrow b' \Rightarrow c \Rightarrow \alpha \\ \Rightarrow \beta \\ a \Rightarrow b \Rightarrow c \\
\end{array}
$$

(2.14)

Note that the morphisms $\alpha, \beta$ above are necessarily isomorphisms in $\mathcal{C}$. Thus, if $E = [a \hookrightarrow b \twoheadrightarrow c]$ and $E' = [a' \hookrightarrow b' \twoheadrightarrow c]$ are objects in $\mathcal{E}_c$, then

$$\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{E}_c}(E', E) = \{(\alpha, \beta) \in \text{Iso}(\mathcal{C}) \times \text{Iso}(\mathcal{C}) \mid \text{diagram (2.14) commutes}\}$$

In particular, $\mathcal{E}_c$ is a groupoid for every $c \in \text{Ob}(\mathcal{Q}_C) = \text{Ob}(\mathcal{C})$.

**Lemma 5.6.4.** Let $\mathcal{C}$ be an exact category, and $S = \text{Iso}(\mathcal{C})$ be the associated groupoid of isomorphisms in $\mathcal{C}$. Then the following holds.

1. For any $c \in \text{Ob}(\mathcal{Q}_C)$, $\mathcal{E}_c$ is a is a symmetric monoidal category, and there is a faithful monoidal functor $\eta_c : S \to \mathcal{E}_c$

   sending $a \mapsto [a \hookrightarrow c \oplus c \to c]$.

2. For the zero object $c = 0$, the functor $\eta_0 : S \to \mathcal{E}_0$ is a homotopy equivalence. Thus

   $$S := \text{Iso}(\mathcal{C}) \simeq \mathcal{E}_0 := \varphi^{-1}(0).$$

**Proof.** Given $E_i = [a_i \hookrightarrow b_i \twoheadrightarrow c]$, $i = 1, 2$ in $\text{Ob}(\mathcal{E}_c)$, we define the “join” operation:

$$E_1 \ast E_2 := [a_1 \oplus a_2 \hookrightarrow b_1 \times_c b_2 \twoheadrightarrow c]$$

which is a symmetric product, with identity being $e := [0 \hookrightarrow c \to c]$. We leave it as a (trivial) exercise to check that $\eta_c$ is fully faithful and monoidal with respect to the “join” product. This proves the first statement.

For $c = 0$, the functor $\eta_0 : S \to \mathcal{E}_0$ sends $a \mapsto [a \twoheadrightarrow a \to 0]$ and a morphism $a \xrightarrow{\alpha} a'$ to the diagram

$$
\begin{array}{c}
a' \Rightarrow a' \Rightarrow 0 \\ \downarrow \alpha \downarrow \alpha^{-1} \\ a \Rightarrow a \\ \downarrow \alpha \\ a \\ \downarrow \alpha \\ 0 \\
\end{array}
$$
Obviously, \( \eta_0 \) is fully faithful, and every \( E \in \text{Ob}(\mathcal{E}_0) \) is isomorphic to one of the form \([a \hookrightarrow a \twoheadrightarrow 0]\), i.e. \( \eta_0 \) is also essentially surjective, and hence is an equivalence of categories. This finishes the proof of the lemma.

Lemma 5.6.4 allows us to define an action of the groupoid \( S \) on the category \( \text{Ex}(C) \). To this end, we note that the direct sum of exact sequences in \( C \) induce an operation \( \oplus \) on \( \text{Ex}(C) \). By the second statement of Lemma 5.6.4, we can embed \( S \) into \( \text{Ex}(C) \) as the zero fiber category of \( \varphi: \text{Ex}(C) \to QC \). Via this embedding, we define the action

\[
S \times \text{Ex}(C) \to \text{Ex}(C)
\]

by \( a \oplus [a' \hookrightarrow b' \twoheadrightarrow c'] := [a \oplus a' \hookrightarrow a \oplus b' \twoheadrightarrow c'] \). Note that \( \varphi(a \oplus E) = \varphi(E) \) for all \( E \in \text{Ob}(\text{Ex}(C)) \) which means that the action of \( S \) on \( \text{Ex}(C) \) preserves the fibers of \( \varphi \). In particular, for any fixed \( c \in \text{Ob}(QC) \) we have an action

\[
S \times E_c \to E_c
\]

and the associated categories \( S \ltimes E_c \) and \( S^{-1}E_c := S \ltimes (S \times \text{Ex}(C)) \).

**Lemma 5.6.5.** If \( C \) is split exact, then the category \( S \ltimes E_c \) is contractible for all \( c \in \text{Ob}(QC) = \text{Ob}(C) \).

**Proof.** Observe that if \( C \) is split exact, then every object of \( E_c \) is isomorphic to one coming from \( S \) (as an image of the functor \( \eta_c \) of Lemma 5.6.4). Hence, \( S \ltimes E_c \) is connected, i.e. \( \pi_0(S \ltimes E_c) = \{1\} \). Now, by Lemma 5.6.4, \( E_c \) has a symmetric monoidal structure. The monoidal product \( \ast \) on \( E_c \) induces a monoidal product on \( S \ltimes E_c \), which makes \( B(S \ltimes E_c) \) an H-space. Since \( \pi_0(S \ltimes E_c) = \{1\} \) is a trivial group, and \( B(S \ltimes E_c) \) is a CW complex, by Theorem 5.3.5 the H-space \( B(S \ltimes E_c) \) is group-like, i.e. it has a homotopy inverse (see Definition 5.3.7).

Assigning to each \( E = [a \hookrightarrow b \twoheadrightarrow c] \in \text{Ob}(S \ltimes E_c) \) the diagonal morphism in \( S \ltimes E_c \),

\[
\delta_E: a \ltimes \xi \twoheadrightarrow b \twoheadrightarrow c
\]

which is represented by the class of the pair \( (a, \tilde{\delta}_E) \in \text{Hom}_{S \ltimes E_c}(E, E \ast E) \), where \( \tilde{\delta}_E \) is given by the diagram

\[
a \oplus a' \twoheadrightarrow b \rightleftarrows a \twoheadrightarrow c
\]

We get a natural transformation \( \delta: \text{id}_{S \ltimes E_c} \Rightarrow \ast \)

\[
\delta = \{\delta_E: E \to E \ast E\}_{E \in \text{Ob}(E_c)}
\]
On $B(S \ltimes \mathcal{E}_c)$ the natural transformation $\delta$ induces a homotopy between the identity on $B(S \ltimes \mathcal{E}_c)$ and the multiplication by 2, i.e. $x \simeq 2 \cdot x$ in $B(S \ltimes \mathcal{E}_c)$. “Adding” the homotopy inverse $(-x)$ implies

$$(-x) + x \simeq -x + 2x \Rightarrow 0 \simeq x$$

Thus $B(S \ltimes \mathcal{E}_c)$ is contractible.

**Corollary 5.6.6.** If $C$ is split exact, the functor $\eta_c : S \to \mathcal{E}_c$ of Lemma 5.6.4 induces a homotopy equivalence $S^{-1}S \sim S^{-1}\mathcal{E}_c$.

**Proof.** This follows from Lemma 5.6.5 and the fact that $S^{-1}S \to S^{-1}\mathcal{E}_c \xrightarrow{\pi} S \ltimes \mathcal{E}_c$

where $\pi$ is the projection induced by $S \times \mathcal{E}_c \to \mathcal{E}_c$ is a homotopy fibration. We leave the latter as an exercise. \hfill \Box

**Exercise 2.** Let $X$ be a category in which every morphism is monic (e.g. isomorphism). Let $S$ act on $X$ so that, for each $x \in X$, the translations $\text{Aut}_S(s) \xrightarrow{\oplus x} \text{Aut}_X(s \oplus x)$ are injective. Then

$$S^{-1}S \xrightarrow{\oplus x} S^{-1}X \xleftarrow{\pi} S \times X$$

is a homotopy fibration for every $x \in \text{Ob}(X)$. In particular, if $B(S \times X) \simeq *$, then $S^{-1}S \xrightarrow{\oplus x} S^{-1}X$ is a homotopy equivalence.

Next, we describe how the fibre category $\mathcal{E}_c$ varies as $c$ varies in $\text{Ob}(C)$.

**Lemma 5.6.7.** For any $f : c' \to c$ in $QC$, there is a canonical functor $f^* : \mathcal{E}_c \to \mathcal{E}_{c'}$, and morphism of functors $\eta : f^* \Rightarrow \text{in}$,

$$\eta = \{\eta_E : f^*(E) \to E\}_{E \in \text{Ob}(\mathcal{E}_c)}$$

where in : $\mathcal{E}_c \hookrightarrow \text{Ex}(C)$ is the fiber inclusion functor.

**Proof.** Let $f \in \text{Hom}_{QC}(c', c)$ be represented by a diagram

$$
c' \xleftarrow{i} c \xrightarrow{p} c''
$$

in $C$ which we will denote by $(i, p)$. To define $f^*$ on $E = [a \hookrightarrow b \to c] \in \text{Ob}(\mathcal{E}_c)$ we choose a pull-back $b' := b \times_c c''$ to get $E'' = [a \hookrightarrow b \times_c c'' \to c'']$ which is exact in $C$ by the definition of an exact category. Then, compose $b' := b \times_c c'' \to c'' \to c'$ and take the kernel $a' := \text{Ker} [b \times_c c'' \to c'' \to c']$. This yields an exact sequence in $\mathcal{E}_{c'}$:

$$f^*(E) := [a' \hookrightarrow b' \to c']$$

87
Since \( \mathcal{E}_c \) is a groupoid, it is easy to check that \( f^* \) is independent (up to isomorphism) of the choices of representatives made, and in fact, \( f^* \) defines a functor. Moreover, the construction of \( f^*(E) \) yields a diagram

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
  & a'^\downarrow & \rightarrow b' & \rightarrow c' \\
\alpha & \downarrow & & \downarrow & \\
  & a' & \rightarrow b' & \rightarrow c'' \\
\beta & \downarrow & & \downarrow & \\
  & a' & \rightarrow b & \rightarrow c \\
\end{array}
\]

Note that \( \beta \) is an admissible monic, because \( a \hookrightarrow b' = b \times_{c} c' \twoheadrightarrow b \) is. This gives the required natural transformation \( \eta_E: f^*(E) \rightarrow E \).

**Corollary 5.6.8.** The functor \( \varphi: \text{Ex}(C) \rightarrow QC \) is a fibered functor with base change \( f^* \). Thus, the assignment \( c \mapsto \mathcal{E}_c \) defines a contravariant functor \( QC \rightarrow \text{Cat} \).

Now, recall that \( S \) acts on the category \( \text{Ex}(C) \) via the inclusion \( S \simeq \mathcal{E}_0 \hookrightarrow \text{Ex}(C) \) and \( \varphi(a \oplus E) = \varphi(E) \), see 5.6.4. Hence, we have the induced functor

\[
\Phi := S^{-1} \varphi: S^{-1}(\text{Ex}(C)) \rightarrow QC
\]

whose fiber over \( 0 \in \text{Ob}(QC) \) is \( S^{-1}S \).

**Proposition 5.6.9.** If \( C \) is split exact, and \( S := \text{Iso}(C) \), then

\[
B(S^{-1}S) \rightarrow BS^{-1}\text{Ex}(C) \xrightarrow{B\Phi} B(QC)
\]

is a homotopy fibration.

**Proof.** This will follow from Quillen’s Theorem B, see Theorem 3.9.1, if we show two things:

1. \( \Phi \) is a fibered functor;
2. the base change functors \( f^*: \mathcal{E}_c \rightarrow \mathcal{E}_c' \).

Now, the first statement follows from Corollary 5.6.8 and the following fact which we leave as an exercise.

**Exercise 3.** Let \( S \) act on \( X \), and let \( F: Y \rightarrow X \) be a functor coequalizing the diagram

\[
S \times X \xrightarrow{\oplus} X
\]

i.e. \( F \) satisfies \( F \circ \oplus = F \circ \pi_X \), where \( \pi_X: S \times X \rightarrow X \) is the projection onto \( X \). Assume that the base change functors of \( F \) commute with the action of \( S \) on the fibers of \( F \). Then, \( F \) is fibered implies that \( S^{-1}F: S^{-1}X \rightarrow Y \) is also fibered.
To check that $f^*$ are homotopy equivalences it suffices to look at maps $f$ of the form $0 \hookrightarrow c$ and $c \twoheadrightarrow 0$. Note that if $f$ is represented by $[0 \hookrightarrow c]$ then $f^*: \mathcal{E}_c \rightarrow \mathcal{E}_0 \simeq S$ takes $[a \hookrightarrow b \twoheadrightarrow c] \mapsto a$. The composition of the equivalence $S^{-1}S \simeq S^{-1}\mathcal{E}_c$ of Corollary 5.6.6 with $f^*$ is the identity functor. Hence, $f^*$ must be a homotopy equivalence.

On the other hand, if $f$ is represented by $[c \twoheadrightarrow 0]$, then $f^*$ maps $[a \hookrightarrow b \twoheadrightarrow c]$ to $b$. In this case, the composition of the homotopy equivalence $S^{-1}S \simeq S^{-1}\mathcal{E}_c$ of Corollary 5.6.6 with $f^*$ maps $a \mapsto a \oplus c$. Since there is a natural transformation $id \Rightarrow \oplus c$, given by natural maps $a \rightarrow a \oplus c$, this composition is a homotopy equivalence, and hence $f^*$ is a homotopy equivalence.

Applying Quillen’s Theorem B finishes the proof.

Finally we can prove Theorem 5.6.1.

**Proof of Theorem 5.6.1.** The result will follow from Proposition 5.6.9 if we show that $S^{-1}\text{Ex}(C)$ is a contractible category. We indicate basic steps.

**Step 1.** We prove that $\text{Ex}(C)$ is a contractible category. Let $(QC)^{\text{mon}} \subset QC$ be the subcategory of $QC$ whose objects are $\text{Ob}((QC)^{\text{mon}}) = \text{Ob}(QC) = \text{Ob}(C)$, and morphisms are represented by admissible monics $[a \hookrightarrow b]$ in $QC$. The category $\text{Ex}(C)$ is equivalent to the Segal subdivision $\text{Sub}[(QC)^{\text{mon}}]$ of the category $(QC)^{\text{mon}}$, which, in turn, is homotopy equivalent to $(QC)^{\text{mon}}$ itself (via the target functor). Recall that *Segal subdivision* $\text{Sub}(A)$ of a category $A$ is the category with $\text{Ob}(\text{Sub}(A)) = \text{Mor}(A)$ and

$$\text{Hom}_{\text{Sub}(A)}(a \rightarrow b, a' \rightarrow b) = \{ (\alpha, \beta) \mid \alpha: a' \rightarrow a, \beta: b \rightarrow b', \text{ s.t. } f' = \beta f \alpha \}$$

Thus,

$$\text{Ex}(C) \simeq \text{Sub}[(QC)^{\text{mon}}] \simeq (QC)^{\text{mon}}$$

But $(QC)^{\text{mon}}$ is contractible, and so $\text{Ex}(C)$ also is.

**Step 2.** Any action of $S$ on a contractible category $X$ is invertible, i.e. has a homotopy inverse. In this case, if all translations in $S$ are faithful, then the functors $X \rightarrow S^{-1}X$, $x \mapsto (s, x)$ are homotopy equivalences for any $s \in \text{Ob}(S)$. Thus, by Step 1 and the assumption of the Theorem we have a homotopy equivalence

$$\text{Ex}(C) \simeq S^{-1}\text{Ex}(C)$$

**Step 3.** From Step 2 we conclude that $S^{-1}\text{Ex}(C)$ is contractible, which finishes the proof.

---

**6 Algebraic K-theory of finite fields**

Our main reference for the material of this section is [Hil81].
6.1 Basics of topological K-theory

Let $X$ be a (para)compact topological space. Let $\mathbb{V}B_{\mathbb{C}}(X)$ be the set of isomorphism classes of complex vector bundles over $X$. Clearly, $\mathbb{V}B_{\mathbb{C}}(X)$ is a commutative unital semi-ring with addition induced by the Whitney sum $\oplus$ and multiplication induced by the tensor product of vector bundles:

\[
\cdot, +: \mathbb{V}B_{\mathbb{C}}(X) \times \mathbb{V}B_{\mathbb{C}}(X) \rightarrow \mathbb{V}B_{\mathbb{C}}(X)
\]

\[
[E_1] + [E_2] := [E_1 \oplus E_2]
\]

\[
[E_1] \cdot [E_2] := [E_1 \otimes E_2]
\]

**Definition 6.1.1.** The topological K-group $K^0(X)$ is defined to be the group completion of $(\mathbb{V}B_{\mathbb{C}}(X), +)$: it is a commutative ring with 1.

**Lemma 6.1.2.** Whenever the two spaces $X \sim Y$ are homotopy equivalent, there is a ring isomorphism $K^0(X) \cong K^0(Y)$.

Thus, $K^0$ defines a contravariant functor

\[
K^0: \text{Ho}(\text{Top})^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \text{ComRings},
\]

where $K^0\left[ X \xrightarrow{f} Y \right] =: f^*: K^0(Y) \rightarrow K^0(X)$ is induced by the pull-back of vector bundles $[E] \mapsto [f^*E]$.

For a fixed vector bundle $E$ on $X$, the dimension function $X \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$ defined by $x \mapsto \dim_{\mathbb{C}}(E_x)$ is locally constant, and defines a semi-sing homomorphism

\[
\dim: \mathbb{V}B_{\mathbb{C}}(X) \rightarrow [X, \mathbb{N}]
\]

\[
[E] \mapsto [\dim(E): x \mapsto \dim_{\mathbb{C}}(E_x)]
\]

Here we use the usual notation $[-, -] := \text{Hom}_{\text{Ho}(\text{Top})}(-, -)$. This extends to a unique ring homomorphism

\[
\dim: K^0(X) \rightarrow [X, \mathbb{Z}] = H^0(X, \mathbb{Z}).
\]

We let $\tilde{K}^0(X) := \text{Ker}[\dim] \subset K^0(X)$. The map $\dim$ actually has a canonical splitting, and so we have a natural decomposition

\[
K^0(X) \cong \tilde{K}^0(X) \oplus H^0(X, \mathbb{Z}).
\]

Next, the functor $\tilde{K}^0$ is representable by the classifying space of $GL(\mathbb{C})$ viewed as a topological group. More precisely,

**Theorem 6.1.3.** For every compact space $X$,

\[
K^0(X) \cong [X, \mathbb{Z} \times BGL(\mathbb{C})^{\text{top}}]
\]

\[
\tilde{K}^0(X) \cong [X, BGL(\mathbb{C})^{\text{top}}]
\]

In particular, there is an isomorphism $\pi_n \left[ BGL(\mathbb{C})^{\text{top}} \right] \cong \tilde{K}^0(S^n)$. 90
Remark 6.1.4. 1. For every $n \geq 1$, the canonical inclusion $U_n \hookrightarrow GL_n(\mathbb{C})$ is a deformation retract of $GL_n(\mathbb{C})^{\text{top}}$. Hence, we have a homotopy equivalence $BU_n \simeq BGL_n(\mathbb{C})^{\text{top}}$ for each $n$, and therefore, taking the inductive limit $n \to \infty$

$$BU \simeq BGL(\mathbb{C})^{\text{top}}.$$  

Thus, we can replace $BGL(\mathbb{C})$ in the above theorem by $BU$.

2. It follows from the last claim of the theorem that

$$K^0(S^d) = \mathbb{Z} \oplus \tilde{K}^0(S^d) = \begin{cases} \mathbb{Z}, & d \equiv 1 \mod 2 \\ \mathbb{Z} \oplus \mathbb{Z}, & d \equiv 0 \mod 2 \end{cases}$$

In particular, for $n \geq 1$,

$$\pi_n(BGL(\mathbb{C})^{\text{top}}) = \begin{cases} 0, & n \equiv 1 \mod 2 \\ \mathbb{Z}, & n \equiv 0 \mod 2 \end{cases}$$

The last isomorphism is called the Bott periodicity.

### 6.2 $\lambda$-structures and Adams operations

**Definition 6.2.1.** If $K$ is a commutative ring, a $\lambda$-structure on $K$ is a family of maps of sets $\lambda^k \colon K \to K$, $k \geq 0$, satisfying the following conditions

1. $\lambda^0(x) = 1$, $\forall x \in K$;

2. $\lambda^k(x + y) = \sum_{i=0}^{k} \lambda^i(x)\lambda^{k-i}(y)$, for all $x, y \in K$;

**Remark 6.2.2.** If $W(K) := 1 + tK[t]$, then the two conditions above translate to the map

$$\lambda_t \colon (K,+) \to (W(K), \cdot)$$

$$x \mapsto \sum_{k \geq 0} \lambda^k(x)t^k$$

is a group homomorphism, i.e. $\lambda_t(x + y) = \lambda_t(x) \cdot \lambda_t(y)$.

**Example 6.2.3.** There is a natural $\lambda$-structure on the rings $\mathbb{Z}$ and $\mathbb{Q}$ given by

$$\lambda^k \colon \mathbb{Z} \to \mathbb{Z}, \quad n \mapsto \binom{n}{k} := \frac{n!}{k!(n-k)!} = \frac{n(n-1)\ldots(n-k+1)}{k!}$$

This motivates the following
**Definition 6.2.4.** Let $K$ be a commutative ring, and let $K_{\mathbb{Q}} := K \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}} \mathbb{Q}$ be the corresponding $\mathbb{Q}$-algebra. Define $\lambda^k : K_{\mathbb{Q}} \to K_{\mathbb{Q}}$ by

$$\lambda^k(x) := \binom{x}{k} := \frac{x(x-1) \ldots (x-k+1)}{k!}$$

We say that $K$ is a binomial ring if

$$\forall x \in K, \forall k \geq 1, \binom{x}{k} \in K \subset K_{\mathbb{Q}}$$

So for example, $\mathbb{Z}$ is a binomial subring of the binomial ring $\mathbb{Q}$.

**Example 6.2.5.** If $A$ is a commutative ring, then $K_0(A)$ has a natural $\lambda$-structure given by

$$\lambda^k : K_0(A) \to K_0(A)$$

$$[P] \mapsto [\Lambda^k A P]$$

Moreover, there is a $\lambda$-ring homomorphism given by rank

$$\text{rk} : K_0(A) \to H_0(A) := [\text{Spec}(A), \mathbb{Z}]$$

$$[\Lambda^k A P] \mapsto [p \mapsto \binom{\text{rk} P}{k}]$$

**Example 6.2.6.** If $X$ is a topological space, then $K^0(X)$ has a natural $\lambda$-structure given by

$$\lambda^k : K^0(X) \to K^0(X)$$

$$[E] \mapsto [\Lambda^k E]$$

Again, we have a homomorphism of $\lambda$-rings

$$\text{dim} : K^0(X) \to H^0(X; \mathbb{Z})$$

$$[\Lambda^k E] \mapsto [x \mapsto \binom{\text{dim} E_x}{k}]$$

**Definition 6.2.7.** A positive structure on a $\lambda$-ring $K$ is given by the following data:

- a $\lambda$-ring homomorphism $\varepsilon : K \to H^0$ (called the augmentation map) admitting a splitting, and so $K \simeq \tilde{K} \oplus H^0$ (here $H^0$ is an abelian group);

- a subset $P \subset K$ called the set of positive elements

satisfying the following properties:

1. $\mathbb{N} = \{0, 1, 2, \ldots\} \subseteq P \subset K$;
2. $P$ is closed under $+$, $\cdot$ and $\lambda^k$ for all $k \geq 1$. In other words, $P$ is a $\lambda$-sub-semiring of $K$;
(3) every element of $\tilde{K} := \text{Ker } \varepsilon$ can be written as $p - q$ for some $p, q \in P$;

(4) for any element $p \in P$,

$$\varepsilon(p) = n \in \mathbb{N}$$

$$\lambda^i(p) = 0, \forall i > n$$

$$\lambda^n(p) \in K^\times$$

**Remark 6.2.8.** Condition (2) says that the group completion $P^{-1}P$ of $(P, +)$ is a $\lambda$-subring of $K$. And therefore, by the condition (3), $P^{-1}P \cong \mathbb{Z} \oplus \tilde{K}$, where $\tilde{K} = \text{Ker } \varepsilon$.

**Definition 6.2.9.** An element $l \in P$ is called a line element if $\varepsilon(l) = 1$, $\lambda^1(l) = l$ and $l \in K^\times$. The set of line elements form a subgroup $L \subset K^\times$.

**Example 6.2.10.** The $\lambda$-ring $K_0(A)$ has

$$H^0 := H_0(A) = \text{Spec } A, \mathbb{Z}$$

$$P := \{ [P] \mid \text{rk}(P) = \text{const} \}$$

$$\varepsilon := \text{rk}: K_0(A) \to H_0(A)$$

The line elements form a subgroup $L = \text{Pic}(A) \subset K_0(A)^\times$ of projective modules of rank 1, which correspond to line bundles on $\text{Spec } A$.

**Example 6.2.11.** Suppose $X$ is a compact space with $\pi_1(X)$ a finite group. The $\lambda$-ring $K^0(X)$ has a canonical positive structure, with

$$H^0 := H^0(X) = [X, \mathbb{Z}]$$

$$P := \{ [E] \mid \text{dim } E = \text{const} \}$$

$$\varepsilon := \text{dim}: K^0(X) \to H^0(X).$$

The set $L$ of line elements in $K^0(X)$ are classes of (topological complex) line bundles over $X$. We have $L \cong H^1(X; \mathcal{O}_X^\times)$.

### 6.3 Witt vectors and special $\lambda$-rings

For a commutative ring $R$, the abelian group $W(R) := 1 + tR[t]$ has a (unique) structure of a unital commutative ring characterized by the following properties:

1. $W: \text{ComRings} \to \text{ComRings}$ sending $R \mapsto W(R)$ is a functor;

2. $1_W := 1 + t$ is the multiplicative identity in $(W(R), *)$;

3. for any $f(t) \in W(R)$ and $r \in R$

$$ (1 + rt) \cdot f(t) = f(rt) $$
This ring is called the ring of (big) Witt vectors in \( R \).

**Remark 6.3.1.** Note that every element \( f(t) \in W(R) \) can be formally factored as \( \prod_{i=1}^{\infty} (1 + r_it^i) \).

There is a (unique) \( \lambda \)-ring structure on \( W(R) \) which is natural in \( R \) and satisfies

\[
\lambda^k(1 - rt) = 0, \quad \forall k \geq 2
\]

Thus, we can also regard \( W \) as a functor \( W: \text{ComRings} \to \lambda\text{Rings} \). The following proposition can be found in [Haz09, Sect.16.1].

**Proposition 6.3.2.** The functor \( W \) is right adjoint to the forgetful functor \( \lambda\text{Rings} \to \text{ComRings} \).

**Remark 6.3.3.** The multiplication \( * \) and the maps \( \lambda^k \) on \( W(R) \) are completely determined by certain “universal” (i.e. independent of \( R \)) polynomials \( \{P_n(x_1, \ldots, x_n; y_1, \ldots, y_n)\}_{n \geq 0} \) and \( \{P_{n,k}(z_1, \ldots, z_{nk})\}_{k \geq 1, n \geq 0} \) such that

\[
\left( \sum_{i \geq 0} a_it^i \right) \ast \left( \sum_{j \geq 0} bjt^j \right) = \sum_{n \geq 0} c_n t^n
\]

where \( c_n = P_n(a_1, \ldots, a_n; b_1, \ldots, b_n), \forall a_i, b_j \in R \), and

\[
\lambda^k \left( \sum_{i \geq 0} a_it^i \right) = \sum_{n \geq 0} b_n^{(k)} t^n
\]

where \( b_n^{(k)} = P_{n,k}(a_1, \ldots, a_{nk}) \).

**Remark 6.3.4.** If \( Q \subseteq R \), then there is an isomorphism \( \prod_{n=1}^{\infty} R \sim W(R) \) of rings, given by \((r_1, r_2, \ldots) \mapsto \prod_{n=1}^{\infty} e^{1-r_nt^n/n} \).

**Definition 6.3.5.** A \( \lambda \)-ring \( K \) is called special if the map \( \lambda_t: K \to W(K) \),

\[
\lambda_t(x) = \sum_{k \geq 0} \lambda^k(x)t^k
\]

is a \( \lambda \)-ring homomorphism (w.r.t. the above \( \lambda \)-structure on \( W(K) \)).

Thus, for a special \( \lambda \)-ring \( K \) we have

- \( \lambda^k(1) = 0 \) for \( k \neq 0, 1 \);
Exercise 1. The assignment \( \lambda^n(s_1) = s_n \) defines a special \( \lambda \)-ring structure on the ring of polynomials \( U = \mathbb{Z}[s_1, \ldots, s_n, \ldots] \).

Theorem 6.3.6. A \( \lambda \)-ring \( K \) with a positive structure \( P \) is special if and only if the following Splitting Property holds: for any \( p \in P \), there exists \( K' \supset K \) (\( \lambda \)-ring embedding) such that \( p \) is a sum of line elements of \( K' \).

6.4 Adams operations

Let \( K \) be a \( \lambda \)-ring given with an augmentation \( \varepsilon : K \to H^0 \hookrightarrow K \).

Definition 6.4.1. An Adams operations \( \Psi^k : K \to K \), \( k \geq 0 \), are defined by the following inductive formulas:

\[
\begin{align*}
\Psi^0(x) &= \varepsilon(x) \\
\Psi^1(x) &= x \\
\Psi^2(x) &= x^2 - \varepsilon(x)\lambda^2(x) \\
&\vdots \\
\Psi^k(x) &= \lambda^1(x)\Psi^{k-1}(x) - \lambda^2(x)\Psi^{k-2}(x) + \cdots + (-1)^{k+1}\lambda^k(x)\varepsilon(x)
\end{align*}
\]

Assume that \( K \) has a positive structure \((K, H^0, P, \varepsilon)\). Then \( K \) satisfies the following properties.

1. for any line element \( l \in L \), \( \Psi^k(l) = l^k \);
2. if \( I \subset K \) is a \( \lambda \)-ideal with \( I^2 = 0 \), then
   \[
   \Psi^k(x) = (-1)^{k-1}k\lambda^k(x), \quad \forall x \in I
   \]
3. for any binomial ring \( H \) (with \( \lambda^k(x) = \binom{x}{k} \)), we have \( \Psi^k(x) = x \) for all \( k \geq 0 \). This formula follows from the obvious formula
   \[
x \cdot \sum_{i=0}^{k-1} (-1)^i \binom{x}{i} = (-1)^{k+1}x \text{ choose } k
   \]

Now, the key property is given by the following

Proposition 6.4.2. If \( K \) is a special \( \lambda \)-ring with a positive structure, then each \( \Psi^k : K \to K \) is a ring homomorphism, and we have

\[
\Psi^j \circ \Psi^k = \Psi^{jk}, \quad \forall j, k \geq 0
\]

Proof. The additivity \( \Psi^k(x + y) = \Psi^k(x) + \Psi^k(y) \) follows from the definition of Adams operations \( \Psi^k \). The multiplicativity follows from the fact that on linear elements, \( \Psi^k(l) = l^k \).

Need to type up the proof.
6.5 Higher topological K-theory and Bott periodicity

Recall from Theorem 6.1.3 and remark after it that for a compact space \( X \), we have

\[
K^0(X) \simeq [X, \mathbb{Z} \times BU] \\
\simeq [X, \mathbb{Z} \times BGL(\mathbb{C})^{\operatorname{top}}]
\]

The higher topological K-groups \( K^{-n}(X), n > 0 \) are defined via the suspension

\[
K^{-n} := K^0(\Sigma^n X) \simeq [\Sigma^n X, \mathbb{Z} \times BU].
\]

Since the suspension functor \( \Sigma \) is left adjoint to the loop group functor, we have

\[
K^{-n}(X) \simeq [X, \Omega^n(\mathbb{Z} \times BU)], \quad \forall n \geq 0
\]

Thus, the functor \( K^{-n} \) is representable by \( \Omega^n(\mathbb{Z} \times BU) \). In particular, if \( X = * \) is just a one-point space,

\[
K^{-n}(*) \simeq [\Sigma^n(*), \mathbb{Z} \times BU] = [S^n, \mathbb{Z} \times BU] = \pi_n(\mathbb{Z} \times BU)
\]

Hence \( \tilde{K}^{-n}(*) = \begin{cases} 
\mathbb{Z}, & n \text{ even} \\
0, & n \text{ odd}
\end{cases} \). Now, a refinement of Bott periodicity says

**Theorem 6.5.1** (Refined Bott periodicity). **There is a natural homotopy equivalence**

\[
\Omega U \simeq \mathbb{Z} \times BU.
\]

**In particular**, \( \Omega^2 U \simeq U \).

Since \( \Omega(BU) \simeq U \), the homotopy equivalence (2.15) implies

\[
\Omega^2(\mathbb{Z} \times BU) \simeq \Omega \Omega BU \simeq \Omega U \simeq \mathbb{Z} \times BU
\]

Thus, \( \Omega^2(\mathbb{Z} \times BU) \simeq \mathbb{Z} \times BU \), which in turn implies the 2-periodicity of the (complex) topological K-theory:

\[
K^{-n-2}(X) \simeq K^{-n}(X), \quad \forall n \in \mathbb{Z}
\]

**Remark 6.5.2.** For real (topological) vector bundles, the analogue of Bott periodicity equivalence is

\[
\Omega^7 O \simeq \mathbb{Z} \times BO
\]

where \( O = O_\infty(\mathbb{R}) \) is the infinite orthogonal group. This equivalence implies \( \Omega^8(\mathbb{Z} \times BO) \simeq \mathbb{Z} \times BO \) and \( \Omega^8 O \simeq O \).
6.6 Quillen Theorem for Finite fields

Recall that the Adams operations

$$\Psi^k(X): \tilde{K}^0(X) \to \tilde{K}^0(X), \quad \forall k \geq 0 \quad (2.16)$$

define a family of ring homomorphisms which are natural in $X$. Since $\tilde{K}^0(X) \simeq [X, BU]$, we have the universal Adams operations

$$\Psi^k: BU \to BU$$

inducing (2.16) for every $X$.

Note that $\tilde{K}^0(X)$ is a commutative ring, so $BU$ is a (homotopy) commutative H-space (see Section 5.3) and each $\Psi^k$ is an H-space map.

Now, let $\mathbb{F}_q$ be a finite field with $q$ elements. Consider $GL_n(\mathbb{F}_q)$ and let $\mathbb{1}_n$ and $\rho_n$ denote the trivial and natural $n$-dimensional representations of $GL_n(\mathbb{F}_q)$ on $\mathbb{F}^n_q$. One can lift (Brower lifting) these representations to complex $n$-dimensional representations. We denote these lifted representations by $\tilde{\mathbb{1}}_n$ and $\tilde{\rho}_n$.

Denote by $B(\tilde{\mathbb{1}}_n)$ and $B(\tilde{\rho}_n)$ the corresponding maps of CW-complexes

$$BGL_n(\mathbb{F}_q) \to BGL(\mathbb{C})$$

Since $BGL(\mathbb{C})$ is a (homotopy) commutative H-space, we can define the map

$$b_n := B(\tilde{\rho}_n) - B(\tilde{\mathbb{1}}_n): BGL_n(\mathbb{F}_q) \to BGL(\mathbb{C}) \simeq BU$$

One can check that the following telescoping diagram commutes (up to homotopy)

$$\cdots \to BGL_n(\mathbb{F}_q) \xrightarrow{b_n} BGL(\mathbb{C}) \to BGL_{n+1}(\mathbb{F}_q) \xrightarrow{b_{n+1}} \cdots$$

where the map $in$ is induced by the standard embedding $GL_n(\mathbb{F}_q) \hookrightarrow GL_{n+1}(\mathbb{F}_q)$. Hence, we get a map (well-defined up to homotopy):

$$b: BGL(\mathbb{F}_q) \to BGL(\mathbb{C}) \simeq BU$$

Since $BU$ is an H-space, this map induces a map

$$\bar{b}: BGL(\mathbb{F}_q)^+ \to BU \quad (2.17)$$
such that

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{BGL}(\mathbb{F}_q) \\
\downarrow b \quad \downarrow i \quad \downarrow \tilde{b}
\end{array}
\begin{array}{c}
\rightarrow
\text{BGL}(\mathbb{F}_q)^+ \\
\rightarrow
\text{BU}
\end{array}
\]

where \( i : \text{BGL}(\mathbb{F}_q) \to \text{BGL}(\mathbb{F}_q)^+ \) is the plus-construction on \( \text{BGL}(\mathbb{F}_q) \), see Section 3.2.

**Theorem 6.6.1** (Quillen). The map (2.17) identifies \( \text{BGL}(\mathbb{F}_q)^+ \) with the homotopy fiber of the map \( \Psi^q - \text{id} : \text{BU} \to \text{BU} \), i.e. we have a homotopy fibration:

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{BGL}(\mathbb{F}_q)^+ \\
\downarrow \tilde{b}
\end{array}
\begin{array}{c}
\rightarrow
\Psi^q - \text{id}
\end{array}
\begin{array}{c}
\rightarrow
\text{BU}
\end{array}
\]

Now, since \( \pi_2 i(\text{BU}) = [S^{2i}, \text{BU}] \simeq \tilde{K}^0(S^{2i}) \simeq \mathbb{Z} \), and \( \Psi^q : \tilde{K}^0(S^{2i}) \to \tilde{K}^0(S^{2i}) \simeq \mathbb{Z} \) is given by the multiplication by \( q^i \), we conclude from the long exact homotopy sequence that

\[
\pi_n [\text{BGL}(\mathbb{F}_q)^+] \simeq \begin{cases} 
0, & n \text{ even} \\
\mathbb{Z}/(q^i-1), & n = 2i-1
\end{cases}
\]

**Corollary 6.6.2.** For every finite field \( \mathbb{F}_q \) and \( n \geq 1 \) we have

\[
K_n(\mathbb{F}_q) \simeq \begin{cases} 
\mathbb{Z}/(q^i-1), & \text{if } n = 2i-1 \\
0, & \text{if } n \text{ is even}
\end{cases}
\]

**Remark 6.6.3.** This shows that, unlike topological K-theory, the algebraic K-theory is **not** periodic.

If \( \mathbb{F}_q \subset \mathbb{F}_q' \), then the induced maps \( K_n(\mathbb{F}_q) \hookrightarrow K_n(\mathbb{F}_q') \) are injective, with

\[
K_n(\mathbb{F}_q) \simeq K_n(\mathbb{F}_q')^G \subseteq K_n(\mathbb{F}_q')
\]

where \( G = \text{Gal}(\mathbb{F}_q'/\mathbb{F}_q) \) is the Galois group.

**Remark 6.6.4.** All products in the ring \( K_\bullet(\mathbb{F}_q) \) are trivial.

### 6.7 \( \lambda \)-operations in Higher K-theory

Recall from Section 6.2 that for a commutative ring \( A \), the Grothendieck group \( K_0(A) \) is equipped with \( \lambda \)-operations

\[
\lambda^k : K_0(A) \to K_0(A) \\
[P] \mapsto [\Lambda^k P]
\]

making \( K_0(A) \) a special \( \lambda \)-ring, see Definition 6.3.5. Our goal is to extend this \( \lambda \)-structure to higher K-group: \( \lambda^k : K_n(A) \to K_n(A), \forall n \geq 0 \). We will use the “plus”-construction to define these operations.
**General construction.** Let $G$ be an arbitrary group, $P$ a finitely generated $A$-module, a faithful representation $\rho: G \to \operatorname{Aut}_A(P)$ of $G$ into $P$, and we also choose an isomorphism $P \oplus Q \simeq A^N$.

We will identify $G$ with its image under $\rho$. For any element $g \in G$, we can extend $g: P \to P$ to an automorphism $\tilde{g}: A^N \to A^N$ by putting $\tilde{g} = g \oplus \text{id}_Q$. This gives a map of spaces

$$q(\rho): BG \to B \operatorname{Aut}_A(P) \to BGL_N(A) \hookrightarrow BGL(A) \to BGL(A)^+ \quad (2.18)$$

A different choice of embedding $P \hookrightarrow A^N$ gives a map homotopic to the above, because the two maps only differ by conjugation, and $BGL(A)^+$ is an $H$-space. Thus, $q(\rho)$ is well-defined up to homotopy.

**Remark 6.7.1.** If $H$ is any $H$-space, the action of $\pi_1(H)$ on $[X,H]$ is trivial for any space $X$, see [Whi78, III.4.18].

**Example 6.7.2.** If $P$ is a finitely generated projective module of rank $n$ over a commutative ring $A$, then $\Lambda^k_A(P)$ is a finitely generated projective $A$-module of rank $\binom{n}{k}$. Being a functor, $\Lambda^k_A$ defines a map $\Lambda^k: \operatorname{Aut}_A(P) \to \operatorname{Aut}_A(\Lambda^k_A P)$. In other words, it defines a representation of $G := \operatorname{Aut}_A(P)$ on $\Lambda^k_A(P)$ for every $k$. Therefore, it induces

$$\Lambda^k_P := q(\lambda^k): B \operatorname{Aut}_A(P) \to BGL(A)^+$$

Note that $\Lambda^0_P = \{\ast\}$ is a constant map, because $\Lambda^0: \operatorname{Aut}_A(P) \to \operatorname{Aut}_A(A) = A^\times$ is a trivial map.

Any (connected) $H$-space $H$ (in particular, $H = BGL(A)^+$) has a multiplicative inverse $i$, defined up to homotopy. Then, given a map $f: X \to H$, we can define

$$(-f): X \overset{f}{\longrightarrow} H \overset{i}{\longrightarrow} H$$

and take a formal $\mathbb{Z}$-linear combination of maps $X \to H$.

**Definition 6.7.3.** If $P$ a projective module of $\operatorname{rk}(P) = n$ over a commutative ring $A$, we define $\lambda^k_P: B \operatorname{Aut}_A(P) \to BGL(A)^+$ by

$$\lambda^k_P := \sum_{i=0}^{k-1} (-1)^i \binom{n+i-1}{i} \Lambda^{k-i}_P$$

To show that the maps $\lambda^k_P$ are compatible with inclusions $P \hookrightarrow P \oplus Q \simeq A^N$ inducing the $\lambda$-maps $\lambda^k: BGL(A)^+ \to BGL(A)^+$, we will use the representation ring $R_A(G)$.

Recall (cf. [Hil81, Sect.1, p.242]) that $R_A(G) = K_0(A[G], A)$, where $K_0(A[G], A)$ is the group completion of the monoid $\operatorname{Rep}(A[G], A)$ of $A[G]$-modules $P$ which are finitely
generated projective modules over $A$. Here $A[G] = A \otimes \mathbb{Z}[G]$ is the group ring of $G$ over $A$. The $\Lambda^k$-operation makes $R_A(G)$ into a special $\lambda$-ring with a positive structure.

We will think of elements of $K_0(A[G], A)$ as stable equivalence classes of pairs $[(P, \rho)]$, where $P$ is a finitely generated projective $A$-module and $\rho: G \to \text{Aut}_A P$ is an action of $G$ on $P$.

**Proposition 6.7.4.** If

$$0 \to (P', \rho') \to (P, \rho) \to (P'', \rho'') \to 0$$

is an exact sequence of $A[G]$-modules, then

$$q(\rho) = q(\rho') + q(\rho'')$$

in $[BG, BGL(A)^+]$ for the map $q$ defined by (2.18). Hence, there is a natural map

$$q: R_A(G) \to [BG, BGL(A)^+]$$

$$[(P, \rho)] \mapsto [q(\rho): BG \to BGL(A)^+]$$

**Proof.** For the proof see [Hil81, Proposition 1.1].

Now, we proceed to define operations $\lambda^k$ on $K_n(A)$ for any $n \geq 0$. Let $i_n: GL_n(A) \hookrightarrow GL_{n+1}(A)$ be the standard embedding, and let

$$i_n^*: R_A[GL_{n+1}(A)] \to R_A[GL_n(A)]$$

be the induced maps of representation rings. Thus,

$$i_n^*: \left[GL_{n+1}(A) \overset{\rho}{\to} \text{Aut}_A P \right] \mapsto \left[GL_n(A) \overset{i_n}{\hookrightarrow} GL_{n+1}(A) \overset{\rho}{\to} \text{Aut}_A P \right]$$

In other words, we have $i_n^*[\rho] := \rho \circ i_n$. Note that $i_n^*[\text{id}_{n+1}] = \text{id}_n \oplus 1$. Here $\text{id}_n$ denotes the module $A^n$ with the obvious $GL_n(A)$-module structure. Then, the *virtual characters*

$$\rho_n := \text{id}_n - n \cdot 1 \in R_A(GL_n(A))$$

satisfy

$$i_n^* \rho_{n+1} = i_n^* (\text{id}_{n+1} - (n + 1) \cdot 1)$$

$$= \text{id}_n \oplus 1 - (n + 1) \cdot 1$$

$$= \text{id}_n - n \cdot 1$$

$$= \rho_n$$

for all $n \geq 0$.

Next, observe that the maps $i_n^*: R_A[GL_{n+1}(A)] \to R_A[GL_n(A)]$ are in fact homomorphisms of (special) $\lambda$-rings. Thus, by Proposition 6.7.4, we have a family of homotopy classes of maps:

$$\Lambda_n^k := q(\lambda^k(\rho_n)) \in [BGL_n(A), BGL(A)^+]$$
which are compatible up to homotopy in the sense that the following diagram commutes (up to homotopy):

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
R_A [GL_{n+1}(A)] & \xrightarrow{q} & [BGL_{n+1}(A), BGL(A)^+] \\
\downarrow i_n^* & & \downarrow i_n^* \\
R_A [GL_n(A)] & \xrightarrow{q} & [BGL_n(A), BGL(A)^+]
\end{array}
\]

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\lambda_k (\rho_{n+1}) & \xleftarrow{\lambda_k} & \lambda_{n+1}^k \\
\lambda_k (\rho_n) & \xleftarrow{\lambda_k} & \lambda_n^k
\end{array}
\]

Since \( BGL_n(A) \xrightarrow{i_n} BGL_{n+1}(A) \) are cofibrations of CW complexes (cofibrant objects), one can inductively construct maps \( \lambda^k: BGL_n(A) \to BGL(A)^+ \) which are strictly compatible, so that in the limit \( n \to \infty \), they determine a continuous map

\[
\lambda_\infty^k: BGL(A) \to BGL(A)^+.
\]

These maps induce the required \( \lambda \)-operations

\[
\lambda^k: BGL(A)^+ \to BGL(A)^+.
\]

**Remark 6.7.5.** The map \( q: R_A(G) \to [BG, BGL(A)^+] \) of Proposition 6.7.4 allows one to define operations in \([BG, BGL(A)^+]\) by applying \( q \) to operations in \( R_A(G) \). It plays the same “universal” role as the Weil algebra in the theory of connections on principal bundles.

The stabilization procedure described above allows to define a map

\[
\varprojlim R_A [GL_n(A)] \to \varprojlim \left[ BGL_n(A), BGL(A)^+ \right] \simeq \left[ BGL(A)^+, BGL(A)^+ \right].
\]

The Adams operations can be defined in this way.

**Definition 6.7.6.** If \( X \) is any space with a basepoint, and \( f: X \to BGL(A)^+ \) is any map, we define

\[
\lambda^k(f) := \lambda^k \circ f: X \xrightarrow{f} BGL(A)^+ \xrightarrow{\lambda^k} BGL(A)^+.
\]

When \( X = S^n \), \([X, BGL(A)^+] \simeq \pi_n (BGL(A)^+) = K_n(A)\). Hence, we get \( \lambda^k: K_n(A) \to K_n(A) \), \( \forall n \geq 1 \).

Recall that the (homotopy commutative) H-space structure “\( + \)” on \( BGL(A)^+ \) is induced by the maps \( \Box: GL_n(A) \times GL_m(A) \to GL_{n+m}(A) \hookrightarrow GL(A) \) by applying the classifying space functor \( B \):

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
BGL_n(A) \times BGL_m(A) & \xrightarrow{\lambda^k} & BGL(A) \\
& & \xrightarrow{\lambda^k} BGL(A)^+ \\
& & \xrightarrow{\lambda^k} BGL(A)^+ \wedge BGL(A)^+
\end{array}
\]

Thus, the set \([X, BGL(A)^+]\) is an abelian group (in the usual sense) for every space \( X \). Now, \( BGL(A)^+ \) carries a natural product

\[
\gamma: BGL(A)^+ \wedge BGL(A)^+ \to BGL(A \otimes A)^+ \to BGL(A)^+
\]
called the Loday product, see Section 3.5 for details. This allows to make \([X, BGL(A)^+]\) into a commutative associative ring via the convolution product: if \(f, g: X \to BGL(A)^+\), then \(f \cdot g\) is given by

\[
\begin{array}{cccc}
X & \xrightarrow{f \cdot g} & BGL(A)^+ \\
\text{diag} & & \\
X \wedge X & \xrightarrow{f \wedge g} & BGL(A)^+ \wedge BGL(A)^+ \\
\end{array}
\]

**Remark 6.7.7.** If \(X = S^n\) or \(X \Sigma Y\), then for any \(n \geq 1\) this product on \([X, BGL(A)^+]\) is zero, because in these cases the diagonal map \(X \to X \wedge X\) is homotopic to the constant map. For \(X = S^1\) it is obvious. For \(X = \Sigma Y\) an example of the required based homotopy \(h: \Sigma Y \wedge I_+ \to \Sigma Y \wedge \Sigma Y\) is given by \(((s, x), t) \mapsto ((s(1 - t), x), (s(1 - t), x))\).

Recall that in any \(\lambda\)-ring \(K\), \(\lambda^0(x) = 1\) for all \(x\), which requires the existence of \(1_k\). In our case, \(\lambda^0(x) = 0\) on \([X, BGL(A)^+]\). To fix this, we extend \(\lambda^k\)-operations to the K-theory space \(K(A) = K_0(A) \times BGL(A)^+\) (see Definition 3.3.4) by the rule

\[
\lambda^k(a, x) := \left(\lambda^k(a), \lambda^k(x) + a \cdot \lambda^{k-1}(x) + \cdots + \lambda^1(a)\lambda^{k-1}(x) + \cdots + \lambda^1(a)x\right)
\]

so that \(\lambda^0(a, x) = (\lambda^0(a), \lambda^0(x)) = (1, 0)\) as usual.

**Theorem 6.7.8.** For any based space \(X\), the operations \(\lambda^k\) make \(K_0(A) \times [X, BGL(A)^+]\) a special \(\lambda\)-ring.

**Proof.** It suffices to consider the universal case: \(X = BGL(A)^+\). Recall that in this case, \(\pi_1(X) = K_1(A) \cong GL(A)/(GL(A), GL(A))\). This gives a canonical diagram

\[
\begin{array}{cccc}
R_A[K_1(A)] & \longrightarrow & R_A[GL(A)] & [BGL(A), BGL(A)^+] \\
& & \downarrow \sim \\
[X, X] & \longrightarrow & [BGL(A)^+, BGL(A)^+] \\
\end{array}
\]

where the last map comes from Quillen Recognition Criterion 3.3.3 (saying that the canonical map \(i: BGL(A) \to BGL(A)^+\) is universal among maps from \(BGL(A)\) to H-spaces in the homotopy category of spaces).

Since \(GL_n(A) \hookrightarrow GL(A) \twoheadrightarrow K_1(A)\), the above map factores as

\[
R_A(K_1(A)) \to \lim R_A(GL_n(A)) \xrightarrow{\varphi} [X, X]
\]

Therefore, we can check the required identities in \(R_A(GL_n(A))\), making sure they are compatible under the stabilization. For example, we know that

\[
\lambda^k(x + y) = \sum \lambda^i(x)\lambda^{k-i}(y)
\]

arises from \(\lambda^k \circ \oplus = \sum \lambda^i \circ \lambda^{k-i}\) in \(R_A[GL_m(A) \times GL_n(A)]\), and similarly the identities for \(\lambda^k(xy)\) and \(\lambda^n(\lambda^k(x))\) hold in \(R_A(G)\) (for the appropriate group \(G\)) and hence in \([X, X]\) via \(\varphi\). □
For any based space $X$, we have an aspherical space $FX \simeq B[\pi_1(X)]$ together with a natural map

$$f: X \to FX$$

such that $f_*: \pi_1(X) \simeq \pi_1(FX)$. By composition, we have

$$R_A(\pi_1(X)) \to [B\pi_1(X), BGL(A)^+] \xrightarrow{f_*} [X, BGL(A)^+]$$

This defines a natural transformation of functors

$$q: R_A[\pi_1(-)] \to [\cdot, BGL(A)^+]$$

from $\text{Ho}(\text{Top}_*)$ to $\text{Groups}$. The following theorem is proved in [Hil81, Cor. 2.3].

**Theorem 6.7.9** (Quillen). The natural transformation $q$ is universal for morphisms

$$\eta_H: R_A[\pi_1(-)] \to [\cdot, H]$$

to representable functors of $H$-spaces. Namely, for any connected $H$-space $H$, a natural transformation $\eta_H$ as above induces a (unique up to homotopy) map $g: BGL(A)^+ \to H$ such that $\eta_H = g^* \circ q$, where $g^*$ is the induced natural transformation $[\cdot, BGL(A)^+] \to [\cdot, H]$.

**Example 6.7.10.** The above construction allows one to construct $\lambda$-operations on $[X, BU]$, where $BU \simeq BGL(\mathbb{C})^{\text{top}}$. It follows that the natural map $[X, BGL(\mathbb{C})^+] \to [X, BU]$, relating algebraic and topological K-theory, commutes with $\lambda^k$ and $\Psi^k$-operations.

**Application.** Let $\mathbb{F}_q$ be a finite field, and $\mathbb{F}_q^\times \to \mathbb{C}^\times$ a group homomorphism. This induces a map of representation rings $R_{\mathbb{F}_q}(G) \xrightarrow{\text{Br}} R_{\mathbb{C}}(G)$ called the Brower lift. By composition, we have

$$R_{\mathbb{F}_q}[\pi_1(X)] \xrightarrow{\text{Br}} R_{\mathbb{C}}[\pi_1(X)] \xrightarrow{q_{\mathbb{C}}} [X, BGL(\mathbb{C})^+]$$

Hence, by Theorem 6.7.9, there is a natural map

$$BGL(\mathbb{F}_q)^+ \to BGL(\mathbb{C})^+ \to BU$$

This map is exactly the map $\tilde{b}$ appearing in Quillen Theorem 6.6.1 identifying $BGL(\mathbb{F}_q)^+$ with the homotopy fiber of $\Psi^q - 1: BU \to BU$. One can show that the Brower lifting $\text{br}$ is actually a map of $\lambda$-rings so that the maps

$$[X, BGL(\mathbb{F}_q)^+] \to [X, BGL(\mathbb{C})^+] \to [X, BU]$$

are also maps of $\lambda$-rings for all based spaces $X$. This was used by Quillen (for $X = S^n$) to compute $K_\bullet(A)$. 

103
7 Final remarks on Algebraic K-theory

7.1 Historic remarks on algebraic and topological K-theory

Recall from Section 6.1 that for a (compact) topological space $X$ one defines $K^0(X)$ as the group completion of the abelian monoid $\pi_0(\text{VB}(X))$ of isomorphism classes of complex vector bundle on $X$ with the monoid operation given by the direct sum $\oplus$ of vector bundles. For $i > 0$, one defines $K^{-i}(X) := K^0(\Sigma^i X)$, where $\Sigma$ denotes the suspension of $X$.

Theorem 7.1.1 (Bott Periodicity). For all $i \geq 0$ there are isomorphisms $K^{-i}(X) \simeq K^{i-2}(X)$.

This allows one to define $K^i(X)$ for all integers $i \in \mathbb{Z}$ simply by periodicity. The functor $K^{-i}: \text{Spaces}^{\text{op}} \to \text{Ab}$ given by $X \mapsto K^{-i}(X)$ satisfies the following properties.

1. It is homotopy invariant in $X$.
2. If $X = X_1 \cup X_2$ for two open subsets $X_1, X_2 \subseteq X$, and $X_{12} := X_1 \cap X_2$, then there exists the following long exact sequence of groups

   $$\cdots \to K^{-i-1}(X) \to K^{-i}(X_{12}) \to K^{-i}(X_1) \oplus K^{-i}(X_2) \to K^{-i}(X) \to \cdots$$

   called Mayer–Vietoris sequence.
3. There is an isomorphism $K^i(X) \otimes \mathbb{Q} \simeq \bigoplus_{k \equiv i \mod 2} H^k(X, \mathbb{Q})$.

So $K^\bullet$ is a generalized cohomology theory.

One could try (as people did) to simply replace $\text{Spaces}^{\text{op}}$ by $\text{Rings}$ and construct functors $K_i: \text{Rings} \to \text{Ab}$ by requiring the following analog of Mayer–Vietoris sequence. One replaces the diagram

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
X_{12} & \hookrightarrow & X_2 \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
X_1 & \hookrightarrow & X
\end{array}
$$

in $\text{Spaces}$ by the following diagram in $\text{Rings}$

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
A & \longrightarrow & A_1 \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
A_2 & \longrightarrow & A_{12}
\end{array}
$$

and then requires existence of the following long exact sequence of abelian groups

$$\cdots \to K_{i+1}(A_{12}) \to K_i(A) \to K_i(A_1) \oplus K_i(A_2) \to K_i(A_{12}) \to \cdots$$

Unfortunately, as was proven by Swan in 1968, there is no non-trivial such cohomology theory on $\text{Rings}$!
What Quillen suggested was, instead of looking for a cohomology theory on \textbf{Rings}, one should fix a ring \(A\), and then associate to it a functor \(k_A: \text{Spaces} \to \text{Ab}\) which is homotopy invariant and satisfies Mayer-Vietoris property (so that \(k_A(S^n) \simeq K_n(A)\)).

This idea was realized by Max Karoubi in 1987. The rest of this section will be devoted to his construction.

Fix a unital associative ring \(A\), and let \(X\) be a topological space (CW complex).

**Definition 7.1.2.** A (flat) \(A\)-bundle on \(X\) is a covering \(P \to X\) s.t. every fiber \(P_x\) over each point \(x \in X\) has a structure of finitely generated projective \(A\)-module.

Let \(\text{VB}_A(X)\) be the category of such flat \(A\)-bundles with morphisms being isomorphisms of \(A\)-bundles (morphisms of \(A\)-bundles are defined in the obvious way). So \(\text{VB}_A(X)\) is a groupoid. Thus we get a functor

\[ \text{VB}_A: \text{Spaces}^{\text{op}} \to \text{AbMon} \]

\[ X \mapsto \pi_0[\text{VB}_A(X)] \]

This is a contravariant homotopy functor (in \(X\)) satisfying Mayer-Vietoris property. This functor turns out to be representable,

\[ \text{VB}_A(X) \simeq \text{Hom}_{\text{Ho}(	ext{Top})}(X, BS) = [X, BS], \]

where \([X, BS]\) denotes the set of homotopy classes of maps from \(X\) to \(BS\), and \(S = \text{Iso}(P(A))\) is the groupoid associated to the category \(P(A)\) of finitely generated projective modules over \(A\).

**Definition 7.1.3.** A virtual \(A\)-bundle on \(X\) is a pair \((Y \xrightarrow{f} X, E \xrightarrow{\pi} Y)\) where \(f: Y \to X\) is an acyclic map (see Definition 3.1.4) and \(E \to Y\) is a flat \(A\)-bundle on \(Y\).

We will denote virtual bundles by \((E \to Y \to X)\). Two virtual bundles \((E \to Y \to X)\) and \((E' \to Y' \to X)\) are called equivalent if there exists commutative up to homotopy diagram of spaces of the form

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
Z & \xrightarrow{h} & Y' \\
\downarrow{h'} & & \downarrow{g} \\
Y & & \downarrow{f} \\
\downarrow{f'} & & \downarrow{X} \\
X & & \\
\end{array}
\]

where \(g\) is acyclic, and there exists a flat \(A\)-bundle \(F \to Z\) such that \(h^*F \simeq E\) and \((h')^*F \simeq E'\).

Given two virtual bundles \((E \to Y \to X)\) and \((E' \to Y' \to X)\) define \(E \oplus E'\) by first defining \(Z := \text{holim}\{Y \to X \leftarrow Y'\}\), and then

\[ E' \oplus E := \pi_Y^*E \oplus \pi_{Y'}^*E' \]

105
where \( \pi_Y : Z \to Y \) and \( \pi_{Y'} : Y' \to Y' \) are the natural maps.

Define \( k_A(X) := \pi_0^{-1} \pi_0 \), the group completion of the abelian monoid \( \pi_0 := \pi_0 \left[ \mathbf{VB}^{\text{vir}}(X) \right] \), where \( \mathbf{VB}^{\text{vir}}(X) \) similar as above denotes the groupoid of virtual \( A \)-bundles on \( X \) and their isomorphisms.

**Theorem 7.1.4** (Karoubi’87, Reference?). The functor \( k_A \) is homotopy representable by \( B(\mathbf{S}^{-1} \mathbf{S}) \), i.e.

\[
k_A(X) \simeq [X, B(\mathbf{S}^{-1} \mathbf{S})] \simeq [X, K_0(A) \times BGL(A)^+] \]

where \( \mathbf{S} = \mathbf{I}(\mathbf{P}(A)) \).

Notice that \( k_A(\mathbf{S}^n) \simeq K_0(A) \oplus K_n(A), \forall n \geq 0 \).

### 7.2 Remarks on delooping

Recall that given two based spaces \((X,x_0),(Y,y_0)\) we define their bouquet \( X \vee Y \) by

\[
X \vee Y = X \sqcup Y / x_0 \sim y_0
\]

Note that \( X \vee Y \) is just the push-out, and hence there is a natural map \( \iota : X \vee Y \hookrightarrow X \times Y \)

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\ast \ar[r] & Y \\
\downarrow & \downarrow \iota_Y \\
X \ar[r] \ar[ru] & X \vee Y \\
\downarrow \iota_X & \downarrow \\
X \times Y
\end{array}
\]

This allows us to define the smash product \( X \wedge Y \) of \( X \) and \( Y \) by putting

\[
X \wedge Y := (X \times Y) / (X \vee Y)
\]

Denoting by \( \mathbf{Top}_* \) the category of pointed topological spaces, we have the following natural bijection

\[
\text{Hom}_{\mathbf{Top}_*}(X \wedge Y, Z) \simeq \text{Hom}_{\mathbf{Top}_*}(X, \text{Hom}_{\mathbf{Top}_*}(Y, Z))
\]

for any pointed spaces \( X, Y, Z \). Here \( \text{Hom}_{\mathbf{Top}_*}(Y, Z) \) is a topological space with compact-open topology.

Finally, we define loop space and suspension of a topological space \( X \) by \( \Sigma X := X \wedge S^1 \) and \( \Omega X = \text{Hom}_{\mathbf{Top}_*}(S^1, X) \), respectively. The constructions of loop space and suspension are obviously functorial, giving two functors \( \Omega, \Sigma : \mathbf{Top}_* \to \mathbf{Top}_* \). Moreover, they are actually adjoint to one another, giving the adjunction

\[
\text{Hom}_{\mathbf{Top}_*}(\Sigma X, Y) \simeq \text{Hom}_{\mathbf{Top}_*}(X, \Omega Y)
\]
The bijection of Hom-sets above is not only a bijection, but is an actual homeomorphism of topological spaces. Taking \( \pi_0 \) of both sides gives the bijection

\[ [\Sigma X, Y] \simeq [X, \Omega Y] \]

**Definition 7.2.1.** A spectrum \( \mathcal{X} \) is a sequence \( \mathcal{X} = \{X_0, X_1, \ldots\} \) of pointed topological spaces given together with bonding maps \( \sigma_i: \Sigma X_i \to X_{i+1}, \forall i \geq 0 \).

**Example 7.2.2.** For any topological space \( X \in \text{Top}_* \) one obtains the suspension spectrum \( \Sigma^\infty X := \{X, \Sigma X, \Sigma^2 X, \ldots\} \) with all bonding maps \( \sigma_i \) being identity maps. The suspension spectrum construction gives a functor \( \Sigma^\infty: \text{Spaces} \to \text{Spectra} \) (we do not specify what is really the category \textbf{Spectra}).

Note that using the adjunction \( \text{Hom}_{\text{Top}_*}(\Sigma X, Y) \simeq \text{Hom}_{\text{Top}_*}(X, \Omega Y) \), bonding maps \( \sigma_i \) give rise to some maps \( \sigma_i^*: X_i \to \Omega X_{i+1} \).

**Definition 7.2.3.** An \( \Omega \)-spectrum \( \mathcal{X} \) is a spectrum s.t. the adjoint bonding maps

\[ \sigma_i^*: X_i \xrightarrow{\sim} \Omega X_{i+1} \]

are homotopy equivalences.

A space \( X \) is called an infinite loop space if it is the 0-th component of an \( \Omega \)-spectrum. The process of constructing other components \( X_i, i \geq 1 \) of this spectrum is called delooping of \( X = X_0 \).

**Example 7.2.4.** Recall that a K-space for an associative unital ring \( A \) is

\[ K(A) = K_0(A) \times BGL(A)^+ =: X_0 \]

The Q-construction applied to the category \( \mathcal{P}(A) \) produces another space, \( BQ\mathcal{P}(A) =: X_1 \). Then “plus=Q” theorem tells that

\[ X_0 \simeq \Omega X_1 \]

Thus it is natural to ask whether the K-space \( X_0 \) is actually the 0-th term of an \( \Omega \)-spectrum, whose first term is given by the space \( X_1 = BQ\mathcal{P}(A) \).

**Theorem 7.2.5 (Reference?).** There is a sequences of spaces starting with \( X_0 = K(A) \) and \( X_1 = BQ\mathcal{P}(A) \) forming an \( \Omega \)-spectrum \( \mathcal{K}(A) \),

\[ \mathcal{K}: \text{Rings} \to \text{Spectra} \]

**Remark 7.2.6.** There is a generalization of Q-construction which produces all the \( X_i \)’s.
Chapter 3

Introduction to model categories

Our main reference for the material of this chapter is a very nice survey paper by Dwyer and Spaliński [DS95]. Besides that, we will use Quillen’s original paper [Qui67], the book [MP12] of May and Ponto, and Appendix A of the paper [BFR14] by Berest, Felder and Ramadoss. For a deeper discussion of the subject we refer to books [Hov99] by Hovey and [Hir03] by Hirschhorn.

1 Model categories

1.1 Axioms

A \((\text{closed})\) model category \(\mathbf{C}\) is a category with three distinguished classes of morphisms, denoted \(\text{Fib}, \text{Cof}, \text{WE}\) and called the fibrations, cofibrations and weak equivalences respectively. We will usually denote the fibrations by \(\rightarrow\), the cofibrations by \(\hookrightarrow\) and the weak equivalences by \(\sim\). The fibrations that are at the same time weak equivalences are called acyclic fibrations and will be denoted by \(\sim\rightarrow\). Similarly, the cofibrations which are weak equivalences will be called acyclic cofibrations, and will be denoted by \(\sim\hookrightarrow\). We will sometimes denote model categories as a tuple \((\mathbf{C}, \text{WE, Fib, Cof})\) to emphasize the additional structure, but most of the time we will just use the notation \(\mathbf{C}\), assuming that the specific classes \(\text{WE, Fib, Cof}\) are understood.

The classes \(\text{Fib, Cof, WE}\) are closed under compositions, contain all the isomorphisms, and moreover the following five axioms are satisfied.

MC1 The category \(\mathbf{C}\) has all finite limits and colimits. In particular, \(\mathbf{C}\) has both initial and terminal objects, denoted by \(e\) and \(*\) respectively.

MC2 If \(f: X \rightarrow Y\) and \(g: Y \rightarrow Z\) are two composable morphisms in \(\mathbf{C}\), then if two out of the three morphisms \(f, g, gf\) are in \(\text{WE}\), then so is the third morphism. This axiom is called “2-out-of-3 axiom.”
MC3 All three classes WE, Fib, Cof are closed under taking retracts. Recall that \( f : X \to Y \) is called a retract of \( g : X' \to Y' \) if there is a commutative diagram

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
X & \longrightarrow & X' \\
\downarrow f & & \downarrow g \\
Y & \longrightarrow & Y'
\end{array}
\]

in which the rows compose to the identity morphisms \( \text{id}_X \) and \( \text{id}_Y \), respectively.

MC4 Consider the diagram

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
A & \longrightarrow & X \\
\downarrow f & & \downarrow h \\
B & \longrightarrow & Y
\end{array}
\]

with \( f \in \text{Cof} \) and \( g \in \text{Fib} \). If one of the maps \( f \) or \( g \) is in addition a weak equivalence, then there exists a lifting \( h : B \to X \) making the diagram commutative.

MC5 Every morphism \( f : A \to X \) in \( C \) can be factored as a composition \( A \xrightarrow{\sim} B \to X \) of an acyclic cofibration followed by a fibration, and as a composition \( A \to Y \xrightarrow{\sim} X \) of a cofibration followed by an acyclic fibration.

Whenever a lifting in Axiom MC4 exists, we say that \( f \) has a left lifting property (LLP) with respect to \( g \), and \( g \) has a right lifting property (RLP) with respect to \( f \). We denote the class of all morphisms that have LLP w.r.t. the acyclic fibrations by \( \text{Fib} \cap \text{WE} \) by \( \text{LLP}(\text{Fib} \cap \text{WE}) \). Similarly, the class of morphisms having RLP w.r.t. the acyclic cofibrations will be denoted by \( \text{RLP}(\text{Cof} \cap \text{WE}) \). Then Axiom MC4 says that \( \text{Cof} \subseteq \text{LLP}(\text{Fib} \cap \text{WE}) \) and \( \text{Fib} \subseteq \text{RLP}(\text{Cof} \cap \text{WE}) \).

Remark 1.1.1. A model category is called bicomplete when it has all small limits and colimits. A model category is called factorable if the factorizations provided by Axiom MC5 are functorial. Most model categories are bicomplete and factorable, and these conditions are often incorporated into the axioms (see [Hir03] and [Hov99]).

Let \( e \in \text{Ob}(C) \) and \( * \in \text{Ob}(C) \) denote the initial and terminal object of \( C \). Axiom MC1 assures they always exist. Then for any \( A \in \text{Ob}(C) \) there are unique morphisms \( e \to A \) and \( A \to * \).

Definition 1.1.2. We say that an object \( A \in \text{Ob}(C) \) is cofibrant if the unique morphism \( e \to A \) is a cofibration. Similarly, we say that \( A \) is fibrant if the morphism \( A \to * \) is a fibration.

We say that a model category \( C \) is cofibrant (resp. fibrant) if every object \( A \in \text{Ob}(C) \) is cofibrant (resp. fibrant).
1.2 Examples of model categories

Topological spaces

The category \textbf{Top} of topological spaces has several natural model structures.

1. Quillen model structure. Let \( \text{WE} \) be the class of weak homotopy equivalences, i.e. maps \( f : X \to Y \) of topological spaces inducing isomorphisms \( f_* : \pi_i(X, x_0) \cong \pi_i(Y, f(x_0)), \ i \geq 0 \) on all homotopy groups.

We take \( \text{Fib} \) to be the class of all Serre fibrations (see Definition 3.0.1). In other words, \( \text{Fib} \) is the class of maps of topological spaces which have LLP with respect to inclusions of CW complexes. We take \( \text{Cof} \) to be the class \( \text{Cof} = LLP(\text{Fib} \cap \text{WE}) \).

\textbf{Theorem 1.2.1.} Cofibrations in the Quillen model structure on \textbf{Top} are the so-called generalized relative CW inclusions, i.e. maps \( X_0 \to \colim_n X_n \), where

\[
X_0 \hookrightarrow X_1 \hookrightarrow X_2 \hookrightarrow \ldots \hookrightarrow X_n \hookrightarrow \ldots
\]

such that \( (X_n, X_{n+1}) \) is a relative CW complex, \( \forall n \geq 0 \). In other words, \( X_{n+1} \) is obtained from \( X_n \) by attaching cells.

\textbf{Corollary 1.2.2.} (a) The category \textbf{Top} with the Quillen model structure is a fibrant model category.
(b) Cofibrant objects are CW complexes.
(c) \( \text{Ho}(\text{Top}) \) is the usual homotopy category.

2. Strøm model structure. Let \( \text{WE} \) be the class of the usual homotopy equivalences. So the class \( \text{WE} \) is strictly bigger than the class of weak equivalences in Quillen model structure on \textbf{Top}.

Let \( \text{Fib} \) be the class of Hurewicz fibrations, see Remark 3.0.3. Again we put \( \text{Cof} \) to be \( \text{Cof} = LLP(\text{Fib} \cap \text{WE}) \).

\textbf{Theorem 1.2.3} (Strøm.[Str72]). The class \( \text{Cof} \) of cofibrations consists precisely of Hurewicz cofibration. In other words, cofibrations are closed embeddings \( f : A \hookrightarrow B \) such that for any \( Y \in \text{Ob}(\text{Top}) \) there exists a lifting

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
B \times \{0\} \sqcup A \times I & \to & Y \\
\text{id} \times i_0 & \downarrow & \text{id} \times \text{id} \\
B \times I & \to & * \\
\end{array}
\]

With Strøm model structure, the category \textbf{Top} is both fibrant and cofibrant.

3. Mixed model structure. There is actually third model structure on \textbf{Top}, which is in some sense a mixture of the previous two. We will not discuss it here, and we refer reader to the book [MP12] for the details.
Complexes

Let \( A \) be a unital associative ring, and take \( \mathbf{C} = \text{Com}^+(A) \) be the category of non-negatively graded chain (i.e. with differential of degree \(-1\)) complexes of \( A \)-modules.

Let \( \text{WE} \) be the class of all quasi-isomorphisms, i.e. morphisms \( f \bullet : X \rightarrow Y \) of complexes inducing isomorphism in homology.

Let \( \text{Fib} \) be the class if maps \( f \bullet : X \rightarrow Y \) such that \( f_n : X_n \rightarrow B_n \) is a surjective map of \( A \)-modules, in every strictly positive degree \( n > 0 \). Once again, we put \( \text{Cof} = \text{LLP}(\text{Fib} \cap \text{WE}) \).

**Theorem 1.2.4.** The class \( \text{Cof} \) consists of all maps \( f \bullet : X \rightarrow Y \) of complexes such that \( f_n : X_n \rightarrow Y_n \) is injective and \( \text{Coker}(f_n) \) is a projective \( A \)-module, for all \( n \geq 0 \).

**Corollary 1.2.5.** The category \( \text{Com}^+(A) \) with the model structure described above is a fibrant model category. Cofibrant objects are precisely the complexes \( X \) with all components \( X_n \) being projective \( A \)-modules.

This model structure is called *projective* model structure on \( \text{Com}^+(A) \). There is a dual model structure, called *injective*, but we will not discuss it here.

### 1.3 Natural constructions

#### Duality

Notice that the axioms MC1–MC5 are symmetric with respect to fibrations and cofibrations. As an immediate corollary we obtain that if \((\mathbf{C}, \text{WE}, \text{Fib}, \text{Cof})\) is a model category, then the opposite category \((\mathbf{C}^{\text{op}}, \text{WE}, \text{Cof}, \text{Fib})\) is again a model category. This phenomenon is sometimes called the *Eckmann–Hilton duality*.

#### Comma categories

If \( d \in \text{Ob}(\mathbf{C}) \) is an object of a model category \( \mathbf{C} \), then both comma categories \( d \backslash \mathbf{C} \) and \( \mathbf{C} / d \) have a natural model structure. Namely, a morphism

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
A & \longrightarrow & B \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
\downarrow \\
\end{array}
\]

in \( d \backslash \mathbf{C} \) is in \( \text{WE}, \text{Fib}, \text{Cof} \) if and only if \( A \rightarrow B \) is in \( \text{WE}, \text{Fib}, \text{Cof} \) in \( \mathbf{C} \), respectively. Similarly for the category \( \mathbf{C} / d \).

#### Morphism category

If \( \mathbf{C} \) is a model category, then the morphism category \( \text{Mor}(\mathbf{C}) \) of morphisms in \( \mathbf{C} \) has a natural model structure. Consider a morphism \((\alpha, \beta) \in \text{Mor}(\text{Mor}(\mathbf{C}))\) given by the diagram

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
A & \overset{\alpha}{\longrightarrow} & A' \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
B & \overset{\beta}{\longrightarrow} & B' \\
\end{array}
\]
Then we define \((\alpha, \beta) \in \text{WE}(\text{Mor}(C))\) (resp. \(\text{Fib}(\text{Mor}(C))\)) if and only if \(\alpha, \beta \in \text{WE}(C)\) (resp. \(\text{Fib}(C)\)). Cofibrations in \(\text{Mor}(C)\) have a bit trickier description. Namely, \((\alpha, \beta) \in \text{Cof}(\text{Mor}(C))\) if and only if \(\alpha \in \text{Cof}(C)\) and the map \(g\) defined by the diagram

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
A & \xrightarrow{f} & B \\
\alpha \downarrow & & \beta \downarrow \\
A' & \xrightarrow{\beta} & B \\
\end{array}
\]

is also a cofibration in \(C\).

**Remark 1.3.1.** Note that \(\text{Mor}(C)\) is actually a functor category,

\[
\text{Mor}(C) = \text{Fun}(\bullet \to \bullet, C)
\]

**Push-out data**

Let \(D\) be the category with \(\text{Ob}(D) = \{a, b, c\}\) and the only non-identity morphisms in \(D\) being the two morphisms \(b \to a\) and \(b \to c\). We denote schematically this category by \(D = \{a \leftarrow b \to c\}\). Let \(C\) be a category, and consider the functor category \(C^D = \text{Fun}(D, C)\). This category is called the category of **push-out data**.

If \(C\) has a model structure, then the category \(C^D\) also inherits a natural model structure. A morphism \([f: X \to Y] \in \text{Mor}(C^D)\) is represented by a diagram

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
X(a) & \xleftarrow{f_a} & X(b) & \xrightarrow{f_b} & X(c) \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
Y(a) & \xleftarrow{f_a} & Y(b) & \xrightarrow{f_c} & Y(c)
\end{array}
\]

Then \(f \in \text{Mor}(C^D)\) is a **weak equivalence** (resp. a fibration) in \(C^D\) if and only if all three \(f_a, f_b, f_c\) are weak equivalences (resp. fibrations) in \(C\). Finally, \(f \in \text{Cof}(C^D)\) if and only if the induced maps

\[
\begin{align*}
& f_{ab}: X(a) \sqcup_{X(c)} Y(b) \to Y(a) \\
& f_{bc}: X(c) \sqcup_{X(b)} Y(b) \to Y(c)
\end{align*}
\]

are cofibrations in \(C\) and also \(f_b\) is a cofibration in \(C\).

There is a similar model structure on the category of **pull-back data** \(C^D\) with \(D = \{a \to b \leftarrow c\}\).
Remark 1.3.2. In general, for arbitrary model category $C$ not every functor category $C^D$ (even for $D$ finite!) has a model structure. But for “good” categories $C$ this is the case.

Moreover, if $D$ is very finite, i.e. in any chain of composable morphisms

$$X_0 \to X_1 \to \cdots \to X_n$$

if $n$ is bigger then some fixed number $N$, then for any model category $C$ the functor category $C^D$ has an induced model structure.

2 Formal consequences of axioms

2.1 Lifting properties

Proposition 2.1.1. In any model category $(C, WE, Fib, Cof)$,

(1) $Cof = LLP(Fib \cap WE)$;

(1’) $Cof \cap WE = LLP(Fib)$;

(2) $Fib = RLP(Cof \cap WE)$;

(2’) $Fib \cap WE = RLP(Cof)$.

Proof. We will only prove (1). The other equalities are proved similarly. The inclusion $Cof \subseteq LLP(Fib \cap WE)$ is part of Axiom MC4. So we need to show that

$$LLP(Fib \cap WE) \subseteq Cof$$

Assume $[f: X \to Y] \in LLP(Fib \cap WE)$. By Axiom MC5, we can factor $f$ as $f: X \leftrightarrow A \xrightarrow{\sim} Y$. Call the corresponding maps $i: X \leftrightarrow A$ and $p: A \xrightarrow{\sim} Y$. By the assumption, there exists a map $g: Y \to A$ lifting the identity map $id_Y$:

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
X & \xrightarrow{i} & A \\
\downarrow f & & \downarrow p \\
Y & \xrightarrow{g} & Y
\end{array}
$$

Hence, we have the following commutative diagram

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
X & \xrightarrow{i} & X \\
\downarrow f & & \downarrow f \\
Y & \xrightarrow{g} & A \\
& \quad & \xrightarrow{p} \\
& \quad & Y
\end{array}
$$

where $pg = id_Y$. Hence, $f$ is a retract of $i$, and so by Axiom MC3 must be a cofibration since so is $i$. \qed

114
Remark 2.1.2. Proposition 2.1.1 shows that the axiomatics of model categories is not minimal. Indeed, the two classes \( \{ \text{Cof}, \text{WE} \} \) determine \( \text{Fib} \), and \( \{ \text{Fib}, \text{WE} \} \) determine \( \text{Cof} \). In practice, one usually describes either \( \{ \text{Cof}, \text{WE} \} \) or \( \{ \text{Fib}, \text{WE} \} \), whichever is easier to describe.

Proposition 2.1.3. In any model category \( \mathcal{C} \),

1. \( \text{Cof} \) and \( \text{Cof} \cap \text{WE} \) are preserved under arbitrary push-outs;
2. \( \text{Fib} \) and \( \text{Fib} \cap \text{WE} \) are preserved under arbitrary pull-backs.

Proof. Note that (2) follows from (1) by duality, i.e. by applying (1) to the category \( \mathcal{C}^{\text{op}} \). To prove (1), for any \( f: X \to Y \) we need to show that in the diagram

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
X & \xrightarrow{f} & Y \\
\downarrow^{i} & & \downarrow^{j} \\
A & \xrightarrow{q} & A \sqcup_{X} Y
\end{array}
\]

the map \( i \in \text{Cof} \) implies that \( j \) is also in \( \text{Cof} \). Note that \( A \sqcup_{X} Y \) exists in \( \mathcal{C} \) by the axiom MC1. We show that \( j \in \text{LLP}(\text{Fib} \cap \text{WE}) \) and then use part (1) of Proposition 2.1.1 to conclude \( j \in \text{Cof} \). Consider the commutative diagram

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
Y & \xrightarrow{a} & E \\
\downarrow^{j} & & \downarrow^{p} \\
A \sqcup_{X} Y & \xrightarrow{b} & B
\end{array}
\]

where \( p \in \text{Fib} \cap \text{WE} \). Enlarge this diagram by adjoining diagram (3.1) on the left:

Since we assumed \( i \) to be a cofibration, axiom MC4 implies that there exists a map \( h: A \to E \) lifting \( q \circ b \) and making the diagram commutative, i.e. \( p \circ h = b \circ g \) and \( h \circ i = a \circ f \).

By the universal property of push-outs, the maps \( h: A \to E \) and \( a: Y \to E \) induce a map \( \tilde{h}: A \sqcup_{X} Y \to E \)

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
A & \xrightarrow{g} & A \sqcup_{X} Y & \xleftarrow{j} & Y \\
\downarrow^{h} & & \downarrow^{\tilde{h}} & & \downarrow^{a} \\
E & & & \sqrt{E} & \\
\end{array}
\]

Hence \( j \in \text{LLP}(\text{Fib} \cap \text{WE}) \) as required. \( \square \)
Remark 2.1.4. In practice, it is often desirable to have all WE’s preserved under push-outs and pull-backs. This does not happen automatically, i.e. it does not formally follow from the axioms.

A model category $C$ is called left proper if for any $i \in \text{Cof}$ and $f \in \text{WE}$ the corresponding push-forward $\tilde{f}$ given by

$$
\begin{array}{c}
X \xleftarrow{i} Y \\
\downarrow & \sim & \downarrow \\
A & \longrightarrow & A \sqcup_X Y
\end{array}
$$

is also a weak equivalence, $\tilde{f} \in \text{WE}$. Similarly, a model category $C$ is called right proper if for any fibration $p \in \text{Fib}$ and any weak equivalence $f \in \text{WE}$ the corresponding pull-back map $\tilde{f}$ defined by the diagram

$$
\begin{array}{c}
X \times_A Y \longrightarrow X \\
\downarrow & \sim & \downarrow \\
Y & \longrightarrow & A
\end{array}
$$

is also a weak equivalence, $\tilde{f} \in \text{WE}$. A proper model category is a category which is both left and right proper. Most interesting model categories are proper but this usually needs a proof.

2.2 Homotopy equivalence relations

Recall that for any $A \in \text{Ob}(C)$, the folding map $\nabla: A \sqcup A \rightarrow A$ is defined as

$$
\begin{array}{c}
e \longrightarrow A \\
\downarrow & j_1 \downarrow & \downarrow \text{id}_A \\
A & \longrightarrow & A \sqcup A \\
\downarrow & j_2 \downarrow & \downarrow \nabla \\
\text{id}_A \sqcup & \downarrow & \downarrow A
\end{array}
$$

Factorizing $\nabla$, we define a cylinder object $Cyl(A)$ over $A$ by

$$
A \sqcup A \xrightarrow{i} Cyl(A) \xrightarrow{\sim} A
$$

Notice that we do not require necessarily that $i$ is a cofibration or that $p$ is a fibration, only that $p$ is a weak equivalence. Moreover, we do not require $Cyl(A)$ to be functorial in $A$, even though the notation might suggest the opposite.

Definition 2.2.1. A cylinder object $Cyl(A)$ is called good if $i \in \text{Cof}$. It’s called very good if both $i \in \text{Cof}$ and $p \in \text{Fib} \cap \text{WE}$. 
Axiom MC5 implies that a very good cylinder exist for any $A \in \text{Ob}(C)$ but it doesn’t have to be neither canonical not functorial in $A$.

**Notation 2.2.2.** We write $i_1 := i \circ j_1$ and $i_2 := i \circ j_2$ for the corresponding maps $A \to Cyl(A)$.

**Lemma 2.2.3.** If $A$ is cofibrant and $Cyl(A)$ is good, then $i_1, i_2 \in \text{Cof} \cap \text{WE}$, i.e. we have

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
A & \sim & Cyl(A) \\
i_1 & \downarrow & i_2 \\
A & \sim & A
\end{array}
$$

**Proof.** We have, by definition,

$$
id_A : A \to Cyl(A) \xrightarrow{\sim} p \to A, \quad (k = 1, 2)
$$

By the axiom MC4, since $p \in \text{WE}$ and $id_A \in \text{WE}$ we conclude that both $i_1, i_2 \in \text{WE}$.

Note that $j_1$ and $j_2$ are defined formally by the push-out square

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
e & \longrightarrow & A \\
& \downarrow & \\
A & \sim & A \sqcup A
\end{array}
$$

Hence, by Proposition 2.1.3, $A$ is cofibrant implies that both $j_1, j_2$ are cofibrations. on the other hand, $Cyl(A)$ is good, which by definition means that $i \in \text{Cof}$. Combining this together, we conclude

$$
i_1 := i \circ j_1 \in \text{Cof}$$
$$i_2 := i \circ j_2 \in \text{Cof}
$$

**Remark 2.2.4.** In $\text{Top}$, every $A \in \text{Ob}(\text{Top})$ has a canonical cylinder $Cyl(A) = A \times [0, 1]$. However, unless $A$ is a CW complex, this cylinder is not good.

**Definition 2.2.5.** If $f, g \in \text{Hom}_C(A, X)$, a left homotopy from $f$ to $g$ is defined to be a map $H : Cyl(A) \to X$ such that the following diagram commutes:

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
A & \sim & Cyl(A) \\
i_1 & \downarrow & i_2 \\
A & \sim & A
\end{array}
$$

A left homotopy $H$ is called good (resp., very good) if $Cyl(A)$ is good (resp. very good). We write $f \sim g$ if there exists a left homotopy $f \xrightarrow{H} g$.  

117
It is easy to show that

(1) If $f \sim_l g : A \to X$, then there is a good left homotopy $f \sim_H g$.

(2) If $X$ is fibrant, and $f \sim_l g$, then there is a very good left homotopy $f \sim_H g$.

**Notation 2.2.6.** For any $A, X \in \text{Ob}(C)$ we write $\pi^l(A, X) := \text{Hom}_C(A, X) / \sim_l$, where $\sim_l$ is the equivalence relation generated by $\sim_l$.

**Theorem 2.2.7** (Properties of left homotopy).  
(1) Assume that $A$ is cofibrant. Then

(1a) For any $X \in \text{Ob}(C)$, $\sim_l$ is an equivalence relation on $\text{Hom}_C(A, X)$, and of course

$$\text{Hom}_C(A, X) / \sim_l = \pi^l(A, X)$$

(1b) Any $p : Y \sim_l \to X$ induces a bijection

$$p_* : \pi^l(A, Y) \xrightarrow{\sim_l} \pi^l(A, X)$$

(2) Assume that $X$ is fibrant. Then

(2a) if $f \sim_l g : A \to X$ and $h : A' \to A$, then

$$fh \sim_l gh : A' \to X$$

(2b) if $f \sim_l g : B \to X$ and $h \sim_l k : A \to B$, then

$$fh \sim_l gh : A \to X$$

Moreover, the composition in $C$ induces

$$\pi^l(A, B) \times \pi^l(B, X) \to \pi^l(A, X)$$

$$([h], [f]) \mapsto [fh]$$

Recall that the diagonal map $\Delta : X \to X \times X$ is defined by

\[
\begin{array}{c}
X \\
\downarrow \Delta \\
X \times X \\
\downarrow p_2 \\
X \\
\end{array}
\]

\[
\begin{array}{c}
X \\
\downarrow p_1 \\
X \\
\end{array}
\]

118
**Definition 2.2.8.** A path object $PX$ on $X$ is defined by factorization of $\Delta$:

$$\Delta: X \xrightarrow{j} PX \xrightarrow{q} X \times X$$

We write

$$q_1 := p_1 \circ q: PX \rightarrow X \times X \xrightarrow{p_1} X$$

$$q_2 := p_2 \circ q: PX \rightarrow X \times X \xrightarrow{p_2} X$$

A path object $PX$ is said to be *good* if $q \in \text{Fib}$. It is said to be *very good* if $q \in \text{Fib}$ and $j \in \text{Cof} \cap \text{WE}$.

**Definition 2.2.9.** A right homotopy $f^K \rightsquigarrow g: A \rightarrow X$ is defined to be a map $K: A \rightarrow PX$ such that

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
X & \xrightarrow{q_1} & PX \\
\downarrow f & & \downarrow q_2 \\
A & \xleftarrow{K} & X
\end{array}$$

We write $f \rightsquigarrow g$ if such $K$ does exist, and denote

$$\pi^r(A,X) := \text{Hom}_C(A,X)/\sim$$

where “$\sim$” is the equivalence relation generated by $\rightsquigarrow$.

**Theorem 2.2.10** (Properties of right homotopy). (1) Assume that $X$ is fibrant. Then

(1a) For any $A \in \text{Ob}(C)$, “$\rightsquigarrow$” is an equivalence relation on $\text{Hom}_C(A,X)$, and

$$\text{Hom}_C(A,X)/\rightsquigarrow = \pi^r(A,X)$$

(1b) Any $i: A \xrightarrow{\sim} B$ induces a bijection

$$i^* : \pi^r(B,X) \xrightarrow{\sim} \pi^r(A,X)$$

(2) Assume that $A$ is cofibrant. Then

(2a) if $f \rightsquigarrow g: A \rightarrow X$ and $h: X \rightarrow X'$, then

$$hf \rightsquigarrow hg: A \rightarrow X'$$
(2b) if $f \sim g: A \to X$ and $h \sim k: X \to Y$, then

$$hf \sim kg: A \to Y$$

Moreover, the composition in $C$ induces

$$\pi^r(A,X) \times \pi^r(X,Y) \to \pi^r(A,X)$$

$$([f], [h]) \mapsto [hf]$$

**Proposition 2.2.11.** Let $f, g \in \text{Hom}_C(A,X)$. Then

1. If $A$ is cofibrant, then
   $$f \sim g \Rightarrow f \sim g$$

2. If $X$ is fibrant, then
   $$f \sim g \Rightarrow f \sim g$$

The following key definition is a consequence of Theorem 2.2.7, Theorem 2.2.10 and Proposition 2.2.11.

**Definition 2.2.12.** Suppose $A \in \text{Ob}(C)$ is a cofibrant, and $X \in \text{Ob}(C)$ is a fibrant object of $C$. Then there is an equivalence relation $\sim$ on $\text{Hom}_C(A,X)$ such that

$$f \sim g \Leftrightarrow f \sim g$$

We say that $f$ and $g$ are homotopic if $f \sim g$, and write

$$\pi(A,X) := \text{Hom}_C(A,X)/\sim$$

**Definition 2.2.13.** If $A$ and $X$ are both fibrant and cofibrant, then $f: A \to X$ is called a homotopy equivalence if there exists $g: X \to A$ such that $gf \sim \text{id}_A$ and $fg \sim \text{id}_X$.

Next, Theorems 2.2.7 and 2.2.10 imply

**Proposition 2.2.14.** Assume $A$ is a cofibrant, $X$ is both fibrant and cofibrant, and $Y$ is a fibrant object of $C$. Then

$$f \sim g: A \to X, \ h \sim k: X \to Y \Rightarrow hf \sim kg: A \to Y$$

and we have the induced map

$$\pi(A,X) \times \pi(X,Y) \to \pi(X,Y).$$
2.3 Whitehead Theorem

The last result we would like to state and prove is an abstract version of the famous theorem of Whitehead, asserting that a weak homotopy equivalence between CW complexes is actually a homotopy equivalence. It is remarkable that this is an abstract model categorical result, “having nothing to do with topology.”

**Theorem 2.3.1.** Suppose $A, X$ are both fibrant and cofibrant in $C$. Then

$$(A \xrightarrow{f} X) \in \text{WE} \Leftrightarrow f \text{ is a homotopy equivalence}$$

**Proof.** Suppose first that $f: A \to X$ belongs to WE. By MC5 we can factor it as

$$f: A \xrightarrow{q} C \xrightarrow{p} X$$

with $q$ being a acyclic cofibration and $p$ being a fibration. By MC2, since both $f, q \in \text{WE}$ then also $p \in \text{WE}$. Since $q \in \text{Cof} \cap \text{WE}$ and $A$ is fibrant, we have

$$\xymatrix{ A \ar@{=}[r]^{\text{id}_A} & A \ar[d]^{\sim} \ar[r]^q & C \ar[r]^p & X \ar[d]^r }$$

By MC4, there exists a lifting $r: C \to A$ such that $rq = \text{id}_A$. By Theorem 2.2.10, since $C$ is cofibrant, $q$ induces a bijection

$$q^*: \pi^r(C,C) \xrightarrow{\simeq} \pi^r(A,C)$$

given by $[g] \mapsto [gq]$. Since

$$q^*([qr]) = [q\text{id}_A] = [q] = [\text{id}_C q]$$

we conclude that $qr \sim \text{id}_C$. Thus, $r$ is a two-sided homotopy inverse of $q$.

A dual argument shows that $p: C \xrightarrow{\sim} X$ has a homotopy inverse $s: X \to C$. Thus, by Theorems 2.2.7 and 2.2.10, $rs: C \xrightarrow{\sim} A$ is a homotopy inverse of $f = pq$.

To prove the converse statement, assume $f$ has a homotopy inverse. Factor $f = pq$ as in 3.2. Note that $C$ is both fibrant and cofibrant. It suffices to prove that $p \in \text{WE}$. Then by MC2 we would have that $f$ is also a weak equivalence.

Let $g: X \to A$ be a homotopy inverse of $f$. Let

$$\xymatrix{ X \ar[r]^{i_1} & Cyl(X) \ar[r]^{i_2} & X \ar[dl]_{fg} \ar[dd]_{H} \ar[dr]^{\text{id}_X} \ar@{=}[r] & X \ar[d] }$$

121
be the corresponding homotopy. By MC4 and Lemma 2.2.3, there exists a map \( \tilde{H} : Cyl(X) \to C \) lifting \( H \) along \( p \):

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
X & \xrightarrow{q} & C \\
\downarrow & \downarrow & \downarrow \\
Cyl(X) & \xrightarrow{\tilde{H}} & X
\end{array}
\]

Put \( s := \tilde{H} \circ i_2 : X \to C \). Then \( ps = p\tilde{H}i_2 = Hi_2 = \text{id}_X \). Since \( q \in \text{WE} \), by the proof of the implication \( \Rightarrow \), \( q \) has a homotopy inverse, say \( r : C \to A \). Then

\[
pq = f \Rightarrow pqr = fr \Rightarrow p \sim fr
\]

Since \( s \sim qg \) (via \( \tilde{H} \)), we have

\[
sp \sim qgp \sim qgr \sim qr \sim \text{id}_C
\]

This implies that \( sp \in \text{WE} \). By the following (trivial) commutative diagram

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
C & \xrightarrow{p} & C \\
\downarrow & \downarrow & \downarrow \\
X & \xrightarrow{s} & C
\end{array}
\]

\( p \) is a retract of \( sp \). Therefore, MC3 implies that \( p \in \text{WE} \) which finishes the proof.

\[\square\]

3 Homotopy category

According to Quillen, the term “model category” is short for “a category of models for a homotopy theory.” The homotopy theory associated to a model category \( C \) is the homotopy category \( \text{Ho}(C) \), which often comes with extra structure (e.g. triangulation, loop and suspension functors, etc.) depending on the model category \( C \) only up to homotopy. The key idea is that the same homotopy category may have different models, which can be used for different problems and in many different situations. The prototypical important example is the classical homotopy theory (with base point). It has three well-known models:

(1) the model category of connected pointed spaces;

(2) the model category of reduced simplicial sets;

(3) the model category of simplicial groups.

These model categories are quite different. For example, (1) and (3) are fibrant model categories, while (2) is cofibrant. But still they are in some sense equivalent, since they have equivalent homotopy categories. Our goal is to make this notion of equivalence and the conditions which imply it precise. This was one of the original goal of Quillen and still is one of the most useful applications of the model category theory.
3.1 Definition of a homotopy category

Let us denote by $C_c, C_f, C_{cf}$ the full subcategories of $C$ consisting respectively of all cofibrant, all fibrant and cofibrant-fibrant objects of $C$. Next, define the categories $\pi C_c, \pi C_f, \pi C_{cf}$ with the same objects as $C_c, C_f$ and $C_{cf}$ and the morphisms being the right homotopy, left homotopy and homotopy classes of morphisms, respectively. In other words, the morphisms are given by

\[
\text{Hom}_{\pi C_c}(A, X) := \pi^r(A, X) \\
\text{Hom}_{\pi C_f}(A, X) := \pi^l(A, X) \\
\text{Hom}_{\pi C_{cf}}(A, X) := \pi(A, X)
\]

Recall that by MC5, for every object $A \in \text{Ob}(C)$ the canonical morphisms $e \rightarrow A$ and $A \rightarrow \ast$ can be factored as:

\[
e \hookrightarrow QA \sim A \\
A \hookrightarrow RA \rightarrow \ast
\]

where $QA$ is a cofibrant and $RA$ is a fibrant object in $C$. The acyclic fibration $p_A: QA \simrightarrow A$ and the acyclic cofibration $i_A: A \simrightarrow RA$ are called cofibrant and fibrant models (or replacements) of $A$, respectively. Fix $QA$ and $RA$ for each $A$. We will assume that $QA = A$ if $A$ is cofibrant, and that $RA = A$ in the case $A$ is fibrant.

Note that $QA$ and $RA$ are not unique. However, we have the following

**Lemma 3.1.1.**

1. The assignment $A \mapsto QA$ extends to a functor $Q: C \rightarrow \pi C_c$. The restriction of $Q$ to $C_f \subseteq C$ induces a functor $Q': \pi C_f \rightarrow \pi C_{cf}$.

2. The assignment $A \mapsto RA$ extends to a functor $R: C \rightarrow \pi C_f$. The restriction of $R$ to $C_c \subseteq C$ induces a functor $R': \pi C_c \rightarrow \pi C_{cf}$.

**Proof.** Given $f: A \rightarrow X$, choose $p_A: QA \simrightarrow A$ and $p_X: QX \simrightarrow X$ cofibrant models and consider the diagram

\[
e \rightarrow QA \sim{%f} \simrightarrow A \simrightarrow X
\]

Since $QA$ is cofibrant and $p_X \in \text{WE} \cap \text{Fib}$, by MC4 there exists $\tilde{f}: QA \rightarrow QX$ lifting $f: A \rightarrow X$. We define $Q(f) := [\tilde{f}]_r \in \text{Mor}(\pi C_c)$.

By Theorem 2.2.7, if $A$ is cofibrant and $p: Y \simrightarrow X$ is an acyclic fibration, then $p$ induces a bijection

\[p_*: \pi^l(A, Y) \simrightarrow \pi^r(A, X)\]
In our situation, this implies that \( p_X : QX \xrightarrow{\sim} X \) induces a bijection

\[
(p_X)_* : \pi'(QA, QX) \xrightarrow{\sim} \pi'(QA, X)
\]
given by \([\tilde{f}] \mapsto [p_X \circ \tilde{f}] = [f \circ p_A] \). Hence \( \tilde{f} \) is uniquely determined by \([f]\) up to left homotopy.

We at the same time, since \( QA \) is cofibrant, Proposition 2.2.11 implies that \( \tilde{f} \) is uniquely determined by \([f]\) up to right homotopy as well.

Note also that MC2, \( \tilde{f} \in WE \) if and only if \( f \in WE \). This shows that \( Q \) is a well-defined functor \( Q : C \to \pi C_c \). We leave the rest as a (trivial) exercise to the reader.

The proof of the second statement is similar to the first one. \( \square \)

**Definition 3.1.2.** The homotopy category \( \text{Ho}(C) \) of a model category \( C \) is the category with \( \text{Ob}(\text{Ho}(C)) = \text{Ob}(C) \) and morphisms between any two objects \( A, X \) given by

\[
\text{Hom}_{\text{Ho}(C)}(A, X) := \text{Hom}_{\pi C_c}(R'QA, R'QX) = \pi(RQA, RQX)
\]

Proposition 2.2.14 ensures that this is well-defined.

### 3.2 Homotopy category as a localization

There is a natural functor \( \gamma : C \to \text{Ho}(C) \) which is the identity on \( \text{Ob}(C) \) and sends

\[
(f : A \to X) \mapsto R'Q(f) : R'Q(A) \to R'Q(X)
\]

IF \( A \) and \( X \) are both fibrant and cofibrant, i.e. \( A, X \in \text{Ob}(C_{cf}) \), then

\[
\gamma : \text{Hom}_C(A, X) \to \text{Hom}_{\text{Ho}(C)}(A, X)
\]

is onto, and induces a bijection

\[
\pi(A, X) \simeq \text{Hom}_{\text{Ho}(C)}(A, X)
\]

because in this case \( RQA = RA = A \) and \( RQX = RX = X \).

**Remark 3.2.1.** At first glance, the definition of \( \text{Ho}(C) \) looks asymmetric: for example, we can replace \( R'(QA) \) by \( Q'(RA) \), etc. This, however, will give the same category as the following key theorem shows.

**Theorem 3.2.2.** The functor \( \gamma : C \to \text{Ho}(C) \) is the localization of \( C \) with respect to the class of weak equivalences \( WE \). Thus,

\[
\text{Ho}(C) \simeq C[\text{WE}^{-1}]
\]

In particular, \( \gamma(f) \) is an isomorphism in \( \text{Ho}(C) \) if and only if \( f \in WE \).
Remark 3.2.3. Theorem 3.2.2 shows that $\text{Ho}(C)$ depends only on the class $\text{WE}$ of weak equivalences, not on fibrations and cofibrations. This suggests that in a model category the weak equivalences play a primary role: they carry the fundamental homotopy-theoretic information, while $\text{Cof}$ and $\text{Fib}$ are auxiliary classes needed to make various constructions.

Proof of Theorem 3.2.2. We need to verify the universal property of localization of categories:

1. $\gamma(f)$ is an isomorphism for any $f \in \text{WE}$;
2. given $F : C \to D$ such that $F(f) \in \text{Iso}(D)$ for any $f \in \text{WE}$ then

$$\text{Ho}(C) \xrightarrow{\gamma} D \xleftarrow{F} C$$

For (1), if $(f : A \to X) \in \text{WE}$ then $R'Q(f)$ is represented by $\tilde{f} : RQA \to RQX$ such that

$$\begin{array}{c}
QA \\ \downarrow i_{QA} \\
QX \\
\downarrow p_X \\
RQA \\
\downarrow \sim \\
* \\
\downarrow \sim \\
RQX
\end{array}$$

From the diagrams above, we have

$$f \in \text{WE} \iff Qf \in \text{WE} \iff RQf \in \text{WE}$$

By Whitehead theorem 2.3.1, $[\tilde{f}]$ represents an isomorphism in $\pi C_{cf}$ which is exactly $\gamma(f)$. On the other hand, if $\gamma(f)$ is an isomorphism in $\text{Ho}(C)$, then $\tilde{f}$ has inverse up to homotopy and hence again is a weak equivalence by Whitehead theorem.

To prove (2), given $F : C \to D$ such that $F(f) \in \text{Iso}(D)$ for any $f \in \text{WE}$ we can construct $\overline{F} : \text{Ho}(C) \to D$ as follows. Since $\text{Ob(\text{Ho}(C)) = \text{Ob}(C)}$, we define

$$\overline{F}(X) = F(X), \forall X \in \text{Ob(\text{Ho}(C))}$$

Given $f \in \text{Hom}_{\text{Ho}(C)}(A, X)$, pick $\tilde{f} : RQA \to RQX$ representing $f$. It is easy to check that $\overline{F}(\tilde{f})$ depends only on the class $[\tilde{f}]$, i.e. on $f$. Then define $\overline{F}(f)$ by

$$\begin{array}{c}
A \\
\downarrow p_A \\
X \\
\downarrow \sim \\
QX \\
\downarrow i_{QX} \\
RQA \\
\downarrow \sim \\
RQX
\end{array}$$

where we put

$$\overline{F}(f) := F(p_X) \circ F(i_{QX})^{-1} \circ F(\tilde{f}) \circ F(i_{QA}) \circ F(p_A)^{-1}$$

It is easy to check that $\overline{F}$ respects identity maps and compositions, and that $\overline{F} \circ \gamma = F$.
In [DK80], Dwyer and Kan give a simple description of morphisms in $\text{Ho}(C)$ in terms of equivalence classes of certain diagrams in $C$. More precisely, they prove the following

**Proposition 3.2.4 ([DK80])**. Let $C$ be a model category, $X, Y \in \text{Ob}(C)$. Then $\text{Hom}_{\text{Ho}(C)}(\gamma X, \gamma Y)$ is isomorphic to the set of equivalence classes of diagrams in $C$ of the form

$$X \leftarrow A \rightarrow B \rightarrow Y$$

where the equivalence relation is generated by the diagrams of the form

$$X \leftarrow A_1 \rightarrow B_1 \rightarrow Y$$

$$A_2 \rightarrow B_2 \rightarrow Y$$

3.3 Derived functors

If $C, D$ are model categories, a functor $F : C \to D$ is called *homotopy invariant* (or *homotopical*) if $F(\text{WE}_C) \subseteq \text{WE}_D$. In this case, it extends (or descends) to a functor $\text{Ho}(F)$ between the homotopy categories

$$\xymatrix{C \ar[r]^F \ar[d]_{\gamma_C} & D \ar[d]^{\gamma_D} \\
\text{Ho}(C) \ar[r]^{\text{Ho}(F)} & \text{Ho}(D)}$$

This rarely happens in practice: interesting functors are usually not homotopical. The idea is that we should define derived functors $\mathbb{L}F, \mathbb{R}F : \text{Ho}(C) \to \text{Ho}(D)$ which give the best possible homotopical approximation to $\text{Ho}(F)$. The key question is: when do $\mathbb{L}F$ and $\mathbb{R}F$ exist and under which conditions do they induce an equivalence of categories $\text{Ho}(C) \simeq \text{Ho}(D)$.

**Definition 3.3.1.** Let $C$ be a model category, $F : C \to D$ a functor from $C$ to any category $D$. A left derived functor $\mathbb{L}F$ of the functor $F$ is a right Kan extension of $F$ along $\gamma_C$, i.e. $\mathbb{L}F := \text{Ran}_{\gamma_C}(F)$, see Section 2.4

$$\xymatrix{C \ar[rr]^F \ar[d]_{\gamma_C} & & D \\
\text{Ho}(C) \ar[rr]_{\mathbb{L}F} & & \text{Ho}(D)}$$

Thus $\mathbb{L}F$ comes with a morphism of functors

$$t : \mathbb{L}F \circ \gamma_C \Rightarrow F$$
which is universal among all pairs \((G: \text{Ho}(C) \to D, s: G \circ \gamma_C \Rightarrow F)\). In other words, for any such pair there exists unique natural transformation \(\bar{s}: F \Rightarrow \mathbb{L}F\) making the following diagram commute:

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
G \circ \gamma_C & \xrightarrow{s} & F \\
\downarrow \pi \circ \gamma_C & & \downarrow t \\
\mathbb{L}F \circ \gamma_C & &
\end{array}
\]

Similarly one defines right derived functor of a functor \(F\) to be a left Kan extension \(\mathbb{R}F = \text{Lan}_{\gamma_C}(F)\).

**Definition 3.3.2.** If \(F: C \to D\) is a functor between two model categories, then its (total) left derived functor \(\mathbb{L}F\) is the left derived functor of the composition \(\gamma_D \circ F: C \to \text{Ho}(D)\), i.e. \(\mathbb{L}F = \text{Ran}_{\gamma_C}(\gamma_D \circ F)\). Similarly, (total) right derived functor of \(F\) is the right derived functor of the composition \(\gamma_D \circ F\).

**Lemma 3.3.3.** Let \(F: C \rightleftarrows D: G\) be a pair of adjoint functors between two model categories. The following conditions are equivalent:

1. \(F(\text{Cof}_C) \subseteq \text{Cof}_D\) and \(F(\text{Cof}_C \cap \text{WE}_C) \subseteq \text{Cof}_D \cap \text{WE}_D\);
2. \(G(\text{Fib}_D) \subseteq \text{Fib}_C\) and \(G(\text{Fib}_D \cap \text{WE}_D) \subseteq \text{Fib}_C \cap \text{WE}_C\);
3. \(F(\text{Cof}_C) \subseteq \text{Cof}_D\) and \(G(\text{Fib}_D) \subseteq \text{Fib}_C\);
4. \(F(\text{Cof}_C \cap \text{WE}_C) \subseteq \text{Cof}_D \cap \text{WE}_D\) and \(G(\text{Fib}_D \cap \text{WE}_D) \subseteq \text{Fib}_C \cap \text{WE}_C\);
5. \(F\) preserves cofibrations between cofibrant objects and \(F(\text{Cof}_C \cap \text{WE}_C) \subseteq \text{Cof}_D \cap \text{WE}_D\);
6. \(G\) preserves fibrations between fibrant objects and \(G(\text{Fib}_D \cap \text{WE}_D) \subseteq \text{Fib}_C \cap \text{WE}_C\).

**Definition 3.3.4.** Pairs of adjoint functors \((F, G)\) satisfying one of the equivalent conditions of Lemma 3.3.3 are called Quillen pairs. In this case we call \(F\) a left Quillen and \(G\) a right Quillen functor respectively.

### 3.4 Quillen’s Adjunction Theorem

**Theorem 3.4.1** (Quillen’s adjunction Theorem). If \((F, G)\) is a Quillen pair, then \(\mathbb{L}F\) and \(\mathbb{R}G\) exist and form an adjoint pair

\[\mathbb{L}F: \text{Ho}(C) \rightleftarrows \text{Ho}(D): \mathbb{R}G\]

The functors \(\mathbb{L}F\) and \(\mathbb{R}G\) are given by the formulas

\[\mathbb{L}F(A) = \gamma_D F(QA)\]
\[\mathbb{R}G(X) = \gamma_C G(RX)\]

where \(p_A: QA \xrightarrow{\sim} A\) is any cofibrant replacement of \(A\) in \(C\) and \(i_X: X \xrightarrow{\sim} RX\) is any fibrant replacement of \(X\) in \(D\).
Remark 3.4.2. The condition for a functor $F$ (resp., $G$) to be a left Quillen (resp., right Quillen) functor is a sufficient, but not a necessary condition for $\mathbb{L}F$ (resp., $\mathbb{R}G$) to exist. In fact, there are many interesting functors, which are not Quillen but still have derived functors (see later).

Remark 3.4.3. The total derived functors of Quillen functors are “better” that of non-Quillen ones in the sense that they satisfy a stronger universal property. Namely, they are actually absolute Kan extensions, see [Mal07]. This means that for any functor $H: \text{Ho}(D) \rightarrow E$ the composition $H \circ \mathbb{L}F$ is the right Kan extension of $H \circ \gamma_D \circ F$ along $\gamma_C$:

\[
\begin{array}{cccccc}
C & \xrightarrow{F} & D & \xrightarrow{\gamma_D} & \text{Ho}(D) & \xrightarrow{H} & E \\
\gamma_C & \downarrow & & & \downarrow & & \\
\text{Ho}(C) & & & & & & \\
\end{array}
\]

One can also prove the following

Lemma 3.4.4. If $F: C \rightleftarrows D: G$ are adjoint, $\mathbb{L}F$ and $\mathbb{R}G$ exist and are absolute derived functors, then $\mathbb{L}F: \text{Ho}(C) \rightleftarrows \text{Ho}(D): \mathbb{R}G$

Remark 3.4.5. Let $F,G: C \rightarrow D$ be two functors between model categories s.t. $\mathbb{L}F$ and $\mathbb{L}G: \text{Ho}(C) \rightarrow \text{Ho}(D)$ exist. Then, any natural transformation $\varphi: F \Rightarrow G$ induces a (unique) natural transformation $\mathbb{L}\varphi: \mathbb{L}F \Rightarrow \mathbb{L}G$. This follows easily from the universal properties.

Indeed, recall that $\mathbb{L}G: \text{Ho}(C) \rightarrow \text{Ho}(D)$ is defined by

\[
\begin{array}{cccccc}
C & \xrightarrow{G} & D & \xrightarrow{\gamma_D} & \text{Ho}(D) \\
\gamma_C & \downarrow & \t_G & \downarrow & \mathbb{L}G \\
\text{Ho}(C) & & & & \\
\end{array}
\]

with the universal property that for any pair $(G', s')$ with $G': \text{Ho}(C) \rightarrow \text{Ho}(D)$ and $s': G' \circ \gamma_C \Rightarrow \gamma \circ G$ there is unique transformation $s: G' \Rightarrow \mathbb{L}G$ making the following diagram commute:

\[
\begin{array}{cccccc}
G' \circ \gamma_C & \xrightarrow{s} & \gamma_D \circ G \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \\
\mathbb{L}G \circ \gamma_C & & & & & & \\
\end{array}
\]

Take $G' = \mathbb{L}F$ and $s' = \gamma_C \varphi \circ t_F: \mathbb{L}F \circ \gamma_C \xrightarrow{t_F} \gamma_D \circ F \xrightarrow{\gamma_D \circ \varphi} \gamma_D \circ G$. Then, there exists unique $\tilde{\varphi}: \mathbb{L}F \Rightarrow \mathbb{L}G$ s.t.

\[
\begin{array}{cccccc}
\mathbb{L}F \circ \varphi & \xrightarrow{t_F} & \gamma \circ F & \xrightarrow{\varphi} & \gamma \circ G \\
\mathbb{L}G \circ \gamma & \downarrow & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \\
\end{array}
\]

128
3.5 Quillen’s Equivalence Theorem

Theorem 3.5.1 (Quillen’s Equivalence Theorem). Let $F : C \leftrightarrows D : G$ be a Quillen pair. Assume that

(*) for every $A \in \text{Ob}(C_c)$ and $X \in \text{Ob}(D_f)$,

$$(f : A \to G(X)) \in \text{WE}_C \iff (\ast^* : F(A) \to X) \in \text{WE}_D$$

Then $\mathbb{L}F : \text{Ho}(C) \simeq \text{Ho}(D) : \mathbb{R}G$ are mutually inverse equivalences of categories.

Question (Marcelo Aguiar): How to state the condition (*) in terms of the adjunction morphisms for $(F, G)$?

Let $\Psi_{A,X} : \text{Hom}_D(F(A), X) \sim \rightarrow \text{Hom}_C(A, G(X)), f \mapsto f^*$ be the adjunction isomorphism. Then, putting $X = F(A)$ and $A = G(X)$, we get a unit morphism

$$\eta_A := \Psi_{A,F(A)}^{-1}(\text{id}_{F(A)}) : A \to GF(A)$$

and a counit morphism

$$\varepsilon_X := \Psi_{G(X),X}^{-1}(\text{id}_{G(X)}) : FG(X) \to X$$

Note that for any maps $f : F(A) \to X$ and $g : A \to G(X)$,

$$\Psi_{A,X}(f) = [A \xrightarrow{\eta_A} GF(A) \xrightarrow{G(f)} G(X)]$$

$$\Psi_{A,X}^{-1}(g) = [F(A) \xrightarrow{F(g)} FG(X) \xrightarrow{\varepsilon_X} X]$$

Lemma 3.5.2. Quillen’s condition (*) is equivalent to the following one:

(**) For every $A \in \text{Ob}(C_c)$ and $X \in \text{Ob}(D_f)$, the following compositions are weak equivalences:

$$[A \xrightarrow{\eta_A} GF(A) \xrightarrow{G(i_{FA})} G(R(FA))] \in \text{WE}_C$$

$$[F(Q(GX)) \xrightarrow{F(p_{GX})} FG(X) \xrightarrow{\varepsilon_X} X] \in \text{WE}_D$$

where $i_{FA} : FA \sim \rightarrow R(FA)$ is a fibrant replacement of $FA$ and $p_{GX} : Q(GX) \sim \rightarrow GX$ is a cofibrant replacement of $GX$.

Proof. (*) $\Rightarrow$ (**). Note that the compositions in (**) are just adjoints of (co)fibrant models. In other words,

$$i_{FA}^* := \Psi_{A,R(FA)}(i_{FA}) = G(i_{FA}) \circ \eta_A$$

and

$$p_{GX}^* := \Psi_{Q(GX),X}^{-1}(p_{GX}) = \varepsilon_X \circ F(p_{GX})$$
Hence, if $A$ is cofibrant, $R(FA)$ is fibrant and $i_{FA} \in WE$ the condition $(\ast)$ implies that $i_{FA} \in WE$. Similarly, if $X$ is fibrant, $Q(GX)$ is cofibrant and $p_{GX} \in WE$ then $(\ast)$ implies that $p_{GX} \in WE$.

$(\ast\ast) \Rightarrow (\ast)$. Assume $(F,G)$ satisfies $(\ast\ast)$. Let $(f: FA \to X) \in WE_D$, where $A \in \text{Ob}(C_c)$ and $X \in \text{Ob}(D_f)$. Then, by definition,

$$\Psi_{A,X}(f) = [A \xrightarrow{\eta_A} GF(A) \xrightarrow{G(f)} G(X)]$$

and we have the following commutative diagram:

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
A & \xrightarrow{\eta_A} & GF(A) \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow G(i_{FA}) \\
A & \xrightarrow{\sim} & G[R(FA)] \\
\end{array}
\quad \begin{array}{ccc}
GF(A) & \xrightarrow{G(f)} & GX \\
\downarrow G(i_{FA}) & & \downarrow G(i_X) \\
G[R(FA)] & \xrightarrow{G(i_X)} & G(RX)
\end{array}
\]

where $i_X: X \xrightarrow{\sim} RX$ and $i_{FA}: FA \xrightarrow{\sim} R(FA)$ are fibrant replacements, and $Rf$ is a (functorial) extension of $f$ to a morphism $Rf: R(FA) \to RX$.

Here for simplicity, we assume that there is a functorial factorization in MC5, so that $QA$ and $RX$ are natural in their arguments.

Now, note that $f \in WE$ implies that $Rf \in WE$ and, since $G$ preserves Fib $\cap$ WE, also $G(Rf) \in WE$ and $G(i_X) \in WE$ (because $X$ is fibrant and $i_X \in WE$).

Since $(\ast\ast)$ holds, the map $A \to G[R(FA)]$ is a weak equivalence. Hence the bottom horizontal composite map and the right-most vertical maps in the above diagram are both weak equivalences. It follows that the top horizontal map (which is $f^*$) is also a weak equivalence.

A similar argument shows that $f^* \in WE$ implies $f \in WE$. \qed

### 3.6 About proofs of Quillen’s Adjunction and Equivalence Theorems

Informally, the reason why a non-homotopical functor (i.e. a functor that does not preserve weak equivalences) admit a derived functor is that it still preserves all weak equivalences between some “good” objects. This is made precise by the following

**Proposition 3.6.1.** Let $F: C \to D$ be a functor from a model category to a category $D$, satisfying the following property:

(P) if $f$ is a weak equivalence between cofibrant objects in $C$, then $F(f)$ is an isomorphism in $D$.

Then, $F$ has the left derived functor $(\mathbb{L}F, t)$ (defined as a right Kan extension of $F$ along $\gamma_C: C \to \text{Ho}(C))$, and for every $A \in \text{Ob}(C_c)$ the map

$$t_A: \mathbb{L}F(A) \xrightarrow{\sim} F(A)$$

is an isomorphism in $D$. 

In practice, to verify property (P) in the case when \( D \) is a homotopy category of another model category, the following lemma is often used.

**Lemma 3.6.2** (K.Brown). Let \( F : C \to D \) be a functor between model categories. Assume that \( F \) maps acyclic cofibrations between cofibrant objects in \( C \) to weak equivalences in \( D \). Then \( F \) maps all weak equivalences between cofibrant objects in \( C \) to weak equivalences in \( D \). Thus, \( \gamma_D \circ F : C \to D \to \text{Ho}(D) \) satisfies property (P), and hence \( \mathbb{L}F \) exists.

**Proof.** Let \( A, B \in \text{Ob}(C) \) be two cofibrant objects in \( C \), and let \( f : A \to B \) be a weak equivalence. Consider the map \( f \sqcup \text{id}_B \) defined by

\[
\begin{array}{c}
A \\
\downarrow_{i_0} \\
A \sqcup B \\
\downarrow_{f \sqcup \text{id}_B} \\
B
\end{array}
\]

and apply MC5 to factor it as \( f \sqcup \text{id}_B = p \circ i \):

\[
\begin{array}{c}
B \\
\downarrow_{i_1} \\
A \sqcup B \\
\downarrow_{i_0} \\
A
\end{array}
\]

\[
\begin{array}{c}
C \\
\downarrow_{p} \\
B
\end{array}
\]

Since both \( A, B \) are cofibrant, \( i_0 \) and \( i_1 \) are cofibrations, since they are push-outs of the cofibrations \( e \hookrightarrow B \) and \( e \hookrightarrow A \), respectively. Hence \( i \circ i_0 \) and \( i \circ i_1 \) are also cofibrations. But \( p \circ i \circ i_0 = f \) is a weak equivalence, and \( p \circ i \circ i_1 = \text{id} \) is a weak equivalence, together with \( p \) being also a weak equivalence by its definition. Hence, by the “two-out-of-three” axiom MC2, both \( i \circ i_0 \) and \( i \circ i_1 \) are in WE, and therefore in Cof \( \cap \text{WE} \).

By the Lemma’s assumption, \( F(i \circ i_0) \in \text{WE} \) and \( F(i \circ i_1) \in \text{WE} \). Also \( F(p) \circ F(ii_1) = F(pii_1) = F(\text{id}) \in \text{WE} \). Applying MC2 again, we get that \( F(p) \in \text{WE} \), and therefore

\[ F(f) = F(pii_0) = F(p) \circ F(ii_0) \in \text{WE} \]

\[ \square \]

**Remark 3.6.3.** Brown’s lemma is very useful in practice, because it allows one to effectively verify (P), and hence prove the existence of derived functors even when Quillen’s Theorem doesn’t apply (i.e. for non-Quillen functors). Typically, it works as follows.

Let \( C \) be a fibrant model category, and let \( F : C \to D \) be a functor which is expected (or suspected) to have a left derived functor. Let \( f : A \xrightarrow{i} B \) be an acyclic cofibration, where
$A, B$ both are cofibrant objects of $C$. Then, by applying MC4 to the lifting problem

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
A & \overset{\text{id}_A}{\rightarrow} & A \\
\downarrow \scriptstyle{f} & \sim & \downarrow \scriptstyle{\ast} \\
B & \rightarrow & \ast
\end{array}
\]

we find that there is a lifting $g: B \rightarrow A$ such that $g \circ f = \text{id}_A$. Notice that we used our assumption that $C$ was a fibrant model category when we said that the map $A \rightarrow \ast$ is actually a fibration. Since $f, g \in \text{WE}$ and $A, B$ are both cofibrant (and automatically fibrant), by Whitehead Theorem 2.3.1 we also know that $f \circ g \sim \text{id}_B$.

Then $F(g)F(f) = \text{id}_{F(A)}$ implies that $\gamma F(f)$ has a left inverse in $\text{Ho}(D)$. So, if it happens that $F(f \circ g) \sim F(\text{id}_B) = \text{id}_{F(B)}$ in $D$, then $F(f)$ would be a weak equivalence, and Brown’s lemma implies the existence of $L_F$.

But the condition $F(f \circ g) \sim \text{id}_{F(B)}$ is easy to verify if $F$ is defined by an explicit formula, and there is a concrete way to describe homotopy equivalence relations in $C$ and $D$ (like in chain complexes, topological spaces, DG algebras).

**Example 3.6.4.** Let $C = \text{DGA}_k$ be the category of DG algebras. Define $\Omega_{As} := T_k(V) = k\langle x, dx \rangle$ to be the tensor algebra of the chain complex $V = [0 \rightarrow k.x \xrightarrow{d} k.dx \rightarrow 0]$ with the variable $x$ being of degree 0, $dx$ being of degree $-1$ and the differential given by $d(x) := dx$.

For any $a \in k$, we have DG evaluation maps

\[
eval_a: \Omega_{As} \rightarrow k \\
x \mapsto a \\
dx \mapsto 0
\]

Then (see [BKR13, Prop. B2]) we have the following. If $f, g: A \rightarrow X$ with $A$ cofibrant, then $f \sim g \iff \exists h: B \ast \Omega_{As}$ such that $h(0) := \eval_0 \circ h = f, h(1) := \eval_1 \circ h = g$

### 3.7 Example: representation functor

Let $k$ be a commutative ring. We assume that $\mathbb{Q} \subseteq k$. Let $\text{Alg}_k$ be the category of associative unital algebras over $k$.

Recall that $M \in \text{Ob}(\text{Alg}_k)$ is called an Azumaya algebra if

- $M$ is a faithfully projective $k$-module (i.e. $M$ is a progenerator in $\text{Mod}(k)$);
- the algebra map

\[
A \otimes A^\text{op} \xrightarrow{\sim} \text{End}_k(A) \\
a \otimes b \mapsto [f(a \otimes b) : x \mapsto axb]
\]

is an isomorphism.
**Example 3.7.1.** Let $k$ be a field. Then $M = \mathbb{M}_n(k)$ the algebra of $n \times n$ matrices over $k$ is an Azumaya algebra.

**Example 3.7.2.** Let $X$ be a normal irreducible affine variety over a a field $\mathbb{F}$ of characteristic 0. Take $k = \mathbb{F}[X]$ to be the ring of regular functions on $X$, and take $\mathcal{F}$ to be an algebraic vector bundle on $X$. Then the module of global section $P = \mathcal{F}(X)$ is a finitely generated projective $k$-module, and $M = \text{End}_k(P)$ is an Azumaya algebra.

**Remark 3.7.3.** In general, Azumaya algebras are étale twisted forms of matrix algebras $\mathbb{M}_n(k)$ over $X = \text{Spec}(k)$.

Every Zariski twisted form of $\mathbb{M}_n(k)$ is an Azumaya algebra as in Example 3.7.2. Such Azumaya algebras are called trivial. One can define the Brauer group $\text{Br}(k)$ to be the set of equivalence classes $[M]$ of Azumaya algebras over $k$ with

$$[M] \sim [M'] \iff M \otimes_k M' \simeq \text{End}_k(P)$$

for some projective $k$-module $P$, with the group multiplication given by

$$[M] \cdot [M'] := [M \otimes_k M']$$

**Theorem 3.7.4** (O.Gabber). $\text{Br}(k) \simeq H^2_{\text{ét}}(X, \mathbb{G}_m)_{\text{torsion}}$

There are many equivalent characterizations of Azumaya algebras. We need a categorical one, due to M.Knus and M.Ojanguren, see [KO74].

Let $M$ be an algebra over $k$, and let $\text{Mod}(k)$ and $\text{Bimod}(M)$ be the categories of $k$-modules and $M$-bimodules, respectively. Define a pair of adjoint functors

$$F : \text{Mod}(k) \dashv \text{Bimod}(M) : G$$

where $F(N) := M \otimes_k N$ with $M$-bimodule structure given by $a(b \otimes n)c := abc \otimes n$. The functor $G$ is given by $G(B) = B^M := \{b \in B \mid bm = mb, \forall m \in M\}$.

**Theorem 3.7.5.** The algebra $M$ is an Azumaya algebra if and only if the adjoint functors $(F,G)$ are mutually inverse equivalences of categories.

**Corollary 3.7.6.** If $M$ is an Azumaya algebra over $k$, then the functors $F,G$ defined above induce mutually inverse equivalences of categories

$$M \otimes - : \text{Alg}_k \cong \text{Alg}_M : (\cdot)^M$$

For a fixed algebra $A \in \text{Alg}_k$ and an Azumaya algebra $M$ over $k$, define

$$\text{Rep}(A, M) : \text{ComAlg}_k \to \text{Sets}$$

by $\text{Rep}(A, M)(B) = \text{Hom}_{\text{Alg}_k}(A, M \otimes_k B)$. 

133
Theorem 3.7.7. The functor $\text{Rep}(A, M)$ is corepresented by the commutative algebra

$$A_M := \left[ (A \sqcup_k M)^M \right]_{ab}$$

(3.3)

Proof. The functor $B \mapsto M \otimes_k B$ can be factored as

$$\text{ComAlg}_k \overset{\text{inc}}{\hookrightarrow} \text{Alg}_k \overset{M \otimes -}{\rightarrow} \text{Alg}_M \overset{\text{forget}}{\rightarrow} \text{Alg}_k$$

Each of the composite factors has left adjoint, namely

$$\text{ComAlg}_k \overset{(-)_{ab}}{\leftarrow} \text{Alg}_k \overset{(-)^M}{\leftarrow} \text{Alg}_M \overset{M \sqcup_k -}{\leftarrow} \text{Alg}_k$$

The key fact is that $(-)^M$ is left adjoint to $M \otimes_k -$ since it is inverse to the equivalence functor $M \otimes_k -$, see Corollary 3.7.6. The composition of left adjoints is left adjoint to the composition of functors. Hence the result.

Definition 3.7.8. For a given Azumaya $k$-algebra $M$, we call the functor

$$(-)_M: \text{Alg}_k \rightarrow \text{ComAlg}_k$$

$$A \mapsto A_M$$

the representation functor in $M$.

Formula 3.3 allow us to extend representation functor to a functor between model categories of DG algebras:

$$(-)_M: \text{DGA}_k \leftrightarrow \text{CDGA}_k: M \otimes -$$

(3.4)

From now on, assume that $Q \subset k$.

Theorem 3.7.9 (cf.[BKR13]). The pair of adjoint functors 3.4 is a Quillen pair. Hence $(-)_M$ has a total derived functor

$$\mathbb{L}(-)_M: \text{Ho(DGA}_k) \rightarrow \text{Ho(CDGA}_k)$$

which is called derived representation functor in $M$.

Proof. Fibrations in both $DGA_k$ and $CDGA_k$ are (degree-wise) surjective morphisms and weak equivalences are quasi-isomorphisms. Since $M$ is an Azumaya algebra, it is projective as a $k$-module, and so $M \otimes_k -$ is an exact functor on $k$-modules. It follows that $M \otimes_k -$ preserves WE and Fib $\cap$ WE. Hence 3.4 is a Quillen pair. 

134
Appendix A

Topological and geometric background

1 Connections on principal bundles

Let $G$ be a Lie group and $M$ be a fixed $C^\infty$-manifold.

Definition 1.0.1. A principal $G$-bundle over $M$ is a smooth map $\pi: P \to M$ s.t. $P$ is equipped with a right $G$-action $P \times G \to P$, $(p,g) \mapsto p \cdot g$ satisfying

1. $\forall x \in M$, $\pi^{-1}(x)$ is a $G$-orbit;

2. $\pi$ is a locally trivial fibre bundle in the sense that $\forall x \in M$, $\exists U \subset M$ open in $M$ and $\exists \varphi: \pi^{-1}(U) \simto U \times G$ with properties

3. $\varphi$ is a diffeomorphism;

4. the following diagram commutes

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
\pi^{-1}(U) & \xrightarrow{\varphi} & U \times G \\
\downarrow{\pi} & & \downarrow{\text{can}} \\
U & \xrightarrow{\sim} & U \times G
\end{array}
$$

5. $\forall p \in \pi^{-1}(U)$ we have $\varphi(p \cdot g) = \varphi(p) \cdot g$, i.e. $\varphi$ is $G$-equivariant.

Remark 1.0.2. It follows from the definition that

- $\pi$ is onto, and $\forall x \in M$, $\pi^{-1}(x) \simeq G$;

- $G$ acts freely on $P$, and $\pi$ induces a diffeomorphism $\pi: P/G \simto M$.

Let $\pi: P \to M$ be a principal $G$-bundle over $M$. For $p \in P$ denote by $T_pP$ the tangent space at $p$. The differential of $\pi$ at $p$ defines a projection $d\pi|_p: T_pP \to T_{\pi(p)}M$. By definition, we call $\text{Ker}(d\pi|_p) \subseteq T_pP$ the space of vertical vectors, and we denote it by $V_p(P)$. 
Definition 1.0.3. A connection on \( P \) is a choice of horizontal subspace \( H_p(P) \subseteq T_pP \) at each point \( p \in P \) (depending smoothly on \( p \)) so that there is a direct sum decomposition
\[
T_pP \simeq V_p(P) \oplus H_p(P)
\] (A.1)

which is \( G \)-invariant (under \( G \)-action on \( P \)). In other words, \( p \mapsto H_p(P) \) defines a distribution on \( P \) (= sub-bundle of the tangent bundle) which is \( G \)-invariant and transverse to the fibers of the principal bundle \( \pi: P \to M \).

Now, for every point \( p \in P \), the vector space \( V_p(P) \) is canonically isomorphic to the Lie algebra \( \mathfrak{g} = \text{Lie}(G) \) which is the tangent space \( T_eG \) to the fibre \( \pi^{-1}(\pi(p)) \simeq G \). Therefore, to give a decomposition (A.1) is equivalent to giving a projection
\[
T_pP \to V_p(P) \simeq \mathfrak{g}, \quad v \mapsto \bar{v}
\]
satisfying certain compatibility conditions (see below). This defines a \( \mathfrak{g} \)-valued 1-form \( \theta \in \Omega^1(P, \mathfrak{g}) = \mathfrak{g} \otimes \Omega^1(P) \) on \( P \) satisfying

1. \( G \)-invariance: \( R_g^*\theta = \text{Ad}_{g^{-1}} \circ \theta, \quad \forall g \in G \), where \( R_g: G \to G \) denotes the right multiplication by \( g \in G \).

2. \( \theta(v) = \bar{v}, \quad \forall v \in V_p(P) \), i.e. maps vertical vectors to their image under the isomorphism \( V_p(P) \simeq \mathfrak{g} \).

Remark 1.0.4. The last condition is equivalent to the following. For every \( p \in P \), the inclusion \( \iota_p: G \simeq P_p \hookrightarrow P \) satisfies \( \iota_p^*\theta = \theta_{\text{MC}} \in \Omega^1(G, \mathfrak{g}) \), where \( \theta_{\text{MC}} \) denotes the so-called Maurer–Cartan form assigning to each tangent vector its left invariant extension.

If \( \theta \in \Omega^1(P, \mathfrak{g}) \) is a connection, then the horizontal space is given by
\[
H_p(P) = \{ v \in T_p(P) \mid \theta(v) = 0 \}.
\]

Definition 1.0.5. A curvature of a connection \( \theta \in \Omega^1(P, \mathfrak{g}) \) is a \( \mathfrak{g} \)-valued 2-form \( \Omega \in \Omega^2(P, \mathfrak{g}) = \mathfrak{g} \otimes \Omega^2(P) \) satisfying the structure equation
\[
d\theta = -\frac{1}{2} [\theta, \theta] + \Omega \] (A.2)

Remark 1.0.6. To define the commutator \( [-,-] \) in (A.2) it is convenient to think of \( \Omega^k(P, \mathfrak{g}) \) as a subspace of the current Lie algebra \( \mathfrak{g}(\Omega^*(P)) \) via inclusion
\[
\Omega^k(P, \mathfrak{g}) \simeq \Omega^k(P) \otimes \mathfrak{g} \hookrightarrow \Omega^*(P) \otimes \mathfrak{g} \simeq \mathfrak{g}(\Omega^*(P)).
\]

Here for the graded algebra \( A = \Omega^*(P) \) with multiplication \( \wedge \) we denote by \( \mathfrak{g}(A) \) its current Lie algebra \( \mathfrak{g} \otimes A \) with the Lie bracket defined by
\[
[\xi \otimes a, \eta \otimes b] := [\xi, \eta] \otimes (a \wedge b)
\]
So \( [\theta, \theta] \) in Equation A.2 is the bracket in the current Lie algebra \( \mathfrak{g}(\Omega^*(P)) \).
Definition 1.0.7. A connection $\theta \in \Omega^1(P, g)$ is called flat if its curvature $\Omega \equiv 0$.

Example 1.0.8. Let $\pi: M \times G \to G$ is the obvious projection. It is a principal $G$-bundle, and the pull-back $\theta = \pi^*\theta_{MC}$ of the Maurer–Cartan form is an example of flat connection. Its flatness follows from flatness of $\theta_{MC}$.

Theorem 1.0.9 (Frobenius). Connection $\theta$ is flat if and only if the corresponding distribution $H(P)$ of horizontal vectors is completely integrable. This means that there exists a submanifold $N \subseteq P$ called integral manifold such that $\forall p \in P, H_p(P) \cong T_pN$.

Equivalently, $\theta$ is flat if $\forall x \in M, \exists U_x \subset M$ open with a trivialization $P|U_x \cong U_x \times G$ such that $\theta|U_x$ is the pull-back of Maurer–Cartan from $\theta_{MC}$ on $G$ via the obvious projection $U_x \times G \to G$. The following characterization of flat connections is very useful.

Corollary 1.0.10. Let $\pi: P \to M$ be a principal $G$-bundle. The following are equivalent:

- $P$ admits a flat connection;
- there exists $\mathcal{U} = \{U_\alpha\}_{\alpha \in I}$ open covering of $M$ for which the transition functions for $P$ $g_{\alpha\beta}: U_\alpha \cap U_\beta \to G$ are constant for all $\alpha, \beta \in I$.

Definition 1.0.11. A principal bundle is called flat if it admits a flat connection.

Suppose $f: H \to G$ is a homomorphism of Lie groups, $\xi: F \to M$ is a principal $H$-bundle, and $\pi: P \to M$ is a principal $G$-bundle. We say that $\xi$ is a reduction of $\pi$ (relative to $f$) if there is a $C^\infty$-map $\varphi: F \to P$ s.t.

- $\varphi(F_x) \subseteq P_x, \forall x \in M$;
- $\varphi(p \cdot h) = \varphi(p) \cdot f(h), \forall p \in F, \forall h \in H$.

Exercise 1. Show that $\pi: P \to M$ has a reduction to $\xi: F \to M$ iff there exists a covering $\mathcal{U} = \{U_\alpha\}_{\alpha \in I}$ of $M$ and a set of transition functions for $P$ of the form $\{f \circ h_{\alpha\beta}\}$ with $h_{\alpha\beta}: U_\alpha \cap U_\beta \to H$ and $f: H \to G$ a homomorphism.

Thus, $\pi: P \to M$ is flat iff it has reduction to $G^\delta$, where $G^\delta$ is the group $G$ equipped with discrete topology, and the homomorphism $f: G^\delta \to G$ is the identity map.

2 Coverings of spaces

Assume first that all the spaces we are dealing with are path connected. Later this assumption will be dropped.

Definition 2.0.1. A map $p: E \to B$ is called a covering of $B$ if every point $c \in B$ has an open neighborhood $U_c \subseteq B$ (called a fundamental neighborhood of $c$) such that every connected component of $p^{-1}(c)$ is open and is mapped homeomorphically to $U_c$. 
Terminology 2.0.2. We call $E$ the total space, and $B$ the base space of a the covering $p: E \to B$. Preimage $p^{-1}(c)$ of any point $c \in B$ is called the fiber of $p$ over $c$ and will be denoted by $E_c$.

Theorem 2.0.3. Let $p: E \to B$ be a covering, $c \in B$ and $e, e' \in E$ such that $p(e) = p(e') = c$. Then

1. Any path $f : [0, 1] \to B$ with $f(0) = c$ lifts uniquely to a path $\tilde{f} : [0, 1] \to E$ such that $f(0) = e$ and $p \circ \tilde{f} = f$.

1. If two paths $f, g : [0, 1] \to B$ are homotopy equivalent, their lifts $\tilde{f} \sim \tilde{g}$ are also homotopy equivalent with $\tilde{f}(0) = \tilde{g}(0)$ and hence also $\tilde{f}(1) = \tilde{g}(1)$.

1. The induced homomorphism $p_* : \pi_1(E, e) \to \pi_1(B, c)$ is injective.

1. The subgroups $p_*(\pi_1(E, e))$ and $p_*(\pi_1(E, e'))$ are conjugate inside $\pi_1(B, c)$.

1. As $e'$ runs over the entire fiber $E_c$, the subgroup $p_*(\pi_1(E, e'))$ runs over all subgroups conjugate to $p_*(\pi_1(E, e))$ in $\pi_1(B, c)$.

Definition 2.0.4. A covering $p : E \to B$ is called universal if $\pi_1(E) = \{1\}$, i.e. if $E$ is simply-connected.

For a space $B$, define its fundamental groupoid $\Pi(B)$ as follows. Its object set $\text{Ob}(\Pi(B))$ is the space $B$ itself, and $\text{Hom}_{\Pi(B)}(x, y) = \{\text{homotopy classes of paths } f\}$. For a path $f$ we denote by $[f]$ its homotopy class.

Definition 2.0.5. Define the fiber translation functor $E : \Pi(B) \to \text{Sets}$ as follows. On objects, for $c \in \text{Ob}(\Pi(B)) = B$ we put $E(c) := E - c = p^{-1}(c)$. If $[f] : c \to c'$ is a homotopy class of paths from $c$ to $c'$, pick a representative $f$ of this class. It is a path $f : [0, 1] \to B$ with $f(0) = c$ and $f(1) = c'$. Now define $E[f]$ to be the map $E_c \to E_{c'}$ sending $e \in E_c$ to $e' \in E_{c'}$, where $e'$ is the target of the lift $\tilde{f}$ of $f$ s.t. $\tilde{f}(0) = e$.

For each point $c \in B = \text{Ob}(\Pi(B))$,

$$\text{Hom}_{\Pi(B)}(c, c) = \text{Aut}_{\Pi(B)}(c) = \pi_1(B, c).$$

The restriction of the fiber translation functor $E$ to $\text{Hom}_{\Pi(B)}(c, c)$ gives an action of $\pi_1(B, c)$ on the fiber $E(c) = E_c$. This action is transitive, and for every $e \in E_c$ the isotropy group $\text{Stab}_{\pi_1(B, c)}(e)$ coincides with $p_*(\pi_1(E, e))$. Thus, there is an isomorphism of $\pi_1(B, c)$-sets

$$E_c \simeq \pi_1(B, c)/p_*(\pi_1(E, e))$$

In particular, if $p : E \to B$ is the universal covering, the group $\pi_1(B, c)$ acts freely on $E_c$ and so $E_c \simeq \pi_1(B, c)$ as $\pi_1(B, c)$-sets.
We now define the category $\text{Cov}(B)$ of coverings of $B$ as follows. Its objects are coverings $p: E \to B$. Morphisms from a covering $p: E \to B$ to a covering $p': E' \to B$ are maps $\alpha: E \to E'$ such that $p = p' \circ \alpha$:

![Diagram](image)

Assigning to each $[p: E \to b] \in \text{Ob}(\text{Cov}(B))$ its fiber functor $E(p): \Pi(B) \to \text{Sets}$ gives a functor

$$E(-): \text{Cov}(B) \to \text{Fun}(\Pi(B), \text{Sets})$$

**Definition 2.0.6.** A functor $T: \Pi(B) \to \text{Sets}$ is called transitive if for every $c \in B$ the homomorphism $T(c): \text{Aut}_{\Pi(B)}(c) \to \text{Aut}_{\text{Sets}}(T(c))$ of groups defines a transitive action of $\text{Aut}_{\Pi(B)}(c)$ on $T(c)$.

**Theorem 2.0.7** (Classification of coverings). The functor $E(-)$ is fully faithful, and its essential image coincides with the full subcategory of transitive functors, $\text{Fun}^\text{tr}(\Pi(B), \text{Sets}) \subset \text{Fun}(\Pi(B), \text{Sets})$. In other words, we have an equivalence of categories

$$E(-): \text{Cov}(B) \xrightarrow{\sim} \text{Fun}^\text{tr}(\Pi(B), \text{Sets})$$

The above theorem might look abstract, but it actually classifies coverings in an explicit way. Indeed, let’s fix $c \in B$ and let $G = \pi_1(B, c)$ be the corresponding fundamental group. Then the inclusion $c \hookrightarrow B$ given an equivalence of groupoids $G \xrightarrow{\sim} \Pi(B)$ since we assumed $B$ is connected. Then,

$$\text{Fun}(\Pi(B), \text{Sets}) \simeq \text{Fun}(G, \text{Sets}) \simeq G\text{-sets}$$

which implies that $\text{Fun}^\text{tr}(\Pi(B), \text{Sets})$ is isomorphic to the category $G\text{-sets}^\text{tr}$ of transitive $G$-sets, which is in turn isomorphic to the subgroup category $\mathcal{O}(G)$. The set of objects of the latter category consists of all subgroups $H \subset G$, and the set of morphisms between $H_1, H_2 \in \text{Ob}(\mathcal{O}(G))$ is the set $\{g \in G \mid gH_1g^{-1} \subseteq H_2\}/N_G(H_1)$ where $N_G(H_1)$ is the normalizer of $H_1$ in $G$. The isomorphism $\mathcal{O}(G) \xrightarrow{\sim} G\text{-sets}^\text{tr}$ is defined by $H \mapsto G/H$.

Note that the connectivity assumption in the constructions above can be dropped. Then the analog of Theorem 2.0.7 for non-connected spaces is the following.

**Theorem 2.0.8.** The fiber functor gives an equivalence of categories

$$E(-): \text{Cov}(B) \xrightarrow{\sim} \text{Fun}(\Pi(B), \text{Sets})$$ (no “tr” in the RHS !)
3 Homotopy fibration sequences and homotopy fibers

Let $C$ be a category, and $i,p \in \text{Mor}(C)$ two morphisms in $C$. Define a lifting problem for $i$ and $p$ as the family of all morphisms $f,g$ making the following diagram commute:

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
A & \xrightarrow{f} & X \\
\downarrow{i} & & \downarrow{p} \\
B & \xrightarrow{g} & Y \\
\end{array}
$$

A solution to a lifting problem for $i,p$ is an arrow $h: B \to X$ making all the diagrams above commutative, i.e. $p \circ h = g$ and $h \circ i = g$ for all $f,g$ in the lifting problem. If such a solution $h$ exists, we say that $i$ has left lifting property (LLP for short) with respect to $p$, or, equivalently, that $p$ has right lifting property (RLP) with respect to $i$. In this case we will write $i \Box p$. If $M \subseteq \text{Mor}(C)$ is any class of morphisms, we define

$$
M_\Box = \{ p \in \text{Mor}(C) \mid i \Box p \quad \forall i \in M \} \\
\Box M = \{ i \in \text{Mor}(C) \mid i \Box p \quad \forall p \in M \}
$$

Let’s now take $C = \text{Spaces}$, and consider the family of maps

$$
\text{Disk} = \{ i_0: D^n \hookrightarrow D^n \times I \}_{n \geq 0}
$$

where $D^n$ denotes the $n$-dimensional cube $D^n = I^n$, $I = [0,1]$ is the unit interval and the maps $i_0: D^n \hookrightarrow D^n \times I$ map $x \mapsto (x,0)$.

**Definition 3.0.1.** A surjective map $p: E \to B$ is called a fibration (in the sense of Serre) if $p \in \text{Disk}_\Box$.

In other words, for any two maps $f: D^n \to E$ and $g: D^n \times I \to B$ satisfying $p \circ f = g \circ i_0$ there exists a map $h: D^n \times I \to E$ making the following diagram commute:

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
D^n & \xrightarrow{f} & E \\
\downarrow{i_0} & & \downarrow{p} \\
D^n \times I & \xrightarrow{g} & B \\
\end{array}
$$

**Lemma 3.0.2.** If $p: E \to B$ is a fibration, then pull-back $\tilde{p}$ along any morphism $f: A \to B$ is again a fibration:

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
A \times_f E & \xrightarrow{} & E \\
\downarrow{\tilde{p}} & & \downarrow{p} \\
A & \xrightarrow{f} & B \\
\end{array}
$$
Proof. Suppose we are given a map \( g: \mathbb{D}^n \to A \times f E \) and \( h: \mathbb{D}^n \times I \to A \) making the following diagram commute:

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\mathbb{D}^n & \xrightarrow{g} & A \times f E \\
i_0 \downarrow & & \downarrow \tilde{p} & \downarrow p \\
\mathbb{D}^n \times I & \xrightarrow{h} & A & \xrightarrow{f} & B \\
\end{array}
\]

We would like to construct a map \( \tilde{h}: \mathbb{D}^n \times I \to A \times f E \) lifting \( h \).

Since \( p: E \to B \) is a fibration, there exists a map \( h': \mathbb{D}^n \times I \to E \) lifting \( f \circ h \). Now we have a map \( h': \mathbb{D}^n \times I \to E \) and \( h: \mathbb{D}^n \times I \to A \) such that \( p \circ h' = f \circ h \). Then by the universal property of pull-back, there exists unique map \( \mathbb{D}^n \times I \to A \times f E \). This map make the following diagram commute, and so it gives the required lifting \( \tilde{h} \) of \( h \).

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\mathbb{D}^n & \xrightarrow{g} & A \times f E \\
i_0 \downarrow & & \downarrow \tilde{p} & \downarrow p \\
\mathbb{D}^n \times I & \xrightarrow{h} & A & \xrightarrow{f} & B \\
h' \downarrow & & \downarrow \tilde{h} & \downarrow h \\
\end{array}
\]

\( \square \)

Remark 3.0.3. There is a more restrictive class of maps, called Hurewich fibrations, which consists of maps \( p: E \to B \) having RLP with respect to maps \( \{i_0: A \to A \times I\} \) for all spaces \( A \).

Theorem 3.0.4 (Homotopy exact sequence). Let \((B, \ast)\) be a based space, and let \( p: (E, \ast) \to (B, \ast) \) be a fibration. Denote the fiber \( p^{-1}(\ast) \subset E \) by \( F \), and fix a base point \( \ast \in F \). Then there exists a long exact sequence of homotopy groups

\[
\cdots \pi_{n+1}(B, \ast) \to \pi_n(F, \ast) \to \pi_n(E, \ast) \to \pi_n(B, \ast) \to \cdots \\
\cdots \to \pi_1(B, \ast) \to \pi_0(F, \ast) \to \pi_0(E, \ast) \to \pi_0(B, \ast) \quad \text{(A.3)}
\]

Example 3.0.5. Locally trivial fiber bundles \( E \to B \) are Serre fibrations.

Example 3.0.6 (Path fibrations). Let \( X \) be a path connected space. The path space of \( X \) is the space \( X^I = \text{Map}(I, X) \) of all continuous maps \( \gamma: I \to X \) equipped with compact-open topology. That is, topology generated by open sets \( U^C \) of paths mapping a fixed compact subset \( C \subset I \) into a fixed open subset \( U \subset X \). If \( X \) has a base point \( \ast \in X \) we define \( PX \) to be the space of paths based at \( \ast \), i.e. \( PX = \{ \gamma: I \to X \mid \gamma(0) = \ast \} \). From now on we assume \( X \) to be pointed.

The path fibration over \((X, \ast)\) is the map \( p_1: PX \to X \) mapping \( \gamma \mapsto \gamma(1) \). The fiber \( p_1^{-1}(\ast) \) over the base point is denoted by \( \Omega X \) and is called the space of based loops. So

\[
\Omega X = \{ \gamma: I \to X \mid \gamma(0) = \gamma(1) = \ast \}
\]

141
Note that both spaces $PX$ and $\Omega X$ are naturally pointed, with the basepoint being the constant path $\gamma_*(t) \equiv \ast$.

**Lemma 3.0.7.** (1) The space $PX$ is contractible for any space $X$.

(2) If $X$ is homotopy equivalent to a CW complex, then so is $\Omega X$.

Suppose $f : X \to Y$ is a map of topological spaces, and let’s assume $Y$ is path connected, so that its path space $PY$ is connected. Define the mapping path space $Nf$ by the pull-back $Nf = X \times_f Y^I$ of the following diagram

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
Nf & \overset{g}{\longrightarrow} & Y^I \\
\downarrow{\pi} & & \downarrow{p_0} \\
X & \overset{f}{\longrightarrow} & Y
\end{array}
$$

In other words, $Nf = \{(x, y) \mid x \in X, \gamma \in PY, \gamma(0) = f(x)\}$. We denote $p : Nf \to Y$ the composition $p = f \circ \pi = p_0 \circ g$ mapping $(x, \gamma) \mapsto p(x, \gamma) = \gamma(1)$. We can construct a section of the natural projection $\pi$ as follows. Let $i : X \to Nf$ be the map that sends each point $x \in X$ to the pair $(x, \gamma_{f(x)}) \in Nf$ where $\gamma_{f(x)}$ is the constant path $\gamma_{f(x)}(t) = f(x)$.

Then $f : X \to Y$ can be decomposed as

$$
X \overset{i}{\longrightarrow} Nf \overset{p}{\longrightarrow} Y
$$

Note that $i : X \to Nf$ is a homotopy equivalence, with $\pi$ giving its homotopy inverse. Indeed, $\pi \circ i = \text{id}_X$, and $i \circ \pi \sim \text{id}_{Nf}$ with homotopy $h : Nf \times I \to Nf$ given by $h_t(x, \gamma) = (x, \gamma_t)$, where $\gamma_t(s) = \gamma((1-t)s)$. Therefore, $i$ is a homotopy equivalence.

On the other hand, $p : Nf \to Y$ is a fibration. To prove this, we need to show that for every diagram of the form

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
\mathbb{D}^n & \overset{g}{\longrightarrow} & Nf \\
\downarrow{s_0} & & \downarrow{p} \\
\mathbb{D}^n \times I & \overset{f}{\longrightarrow} & Y
\end{array}
$$

there exists a map $h$ making the diagram commute. We write $g(a)$ as $g(a) = (g_1(a), g_2(a))$ and set $h(a, t) = (g_1(a), j(a, t))$ where

$$
j(a, t)(s) = \begin{cases}
g_2(a)(s + st), & \text{if } 0 \leq s \leq \frac{1}{1+t} \\
f(a, s + ts - 1), & \text{if } \frac{1}{1+t} \leq s \leq 1
\end{cases}
$$

It is easy to see that this map is the lifting we want. Therefore, we have just proved the following

**Proposition 3.0.8.** Any map $f : X \to Y$ of topological spaces can be written as a composition of a homotopy equivalence and a fibration.
**Definition 3.0.9.** The fiber \( p^{-1}(\ast) \) of the map \( p: Nf \to Y \) over the base point \( \ast \) as called the homotopy fiber of \( f \) over \( \ast \), and is denoted by \( Ff \).

In other words, the homotopy fiber is the pullback \( Ff = Nf \times_Y \{ \ast \} \), and so

\[
Ff = Nf \times_Y \{ \ast \} = X \times_f Y^I \times_Y \{ \ast \} = X \times_f PY = \{(x, \gamma) | x \in X, \gamma \in PY, \gamma(0) = \ast \text{ and } \gamma(1) = f(x)\}.
\]

Given any sequence of spaces \( F \xrightarrow{j} X \xrightarrow{f} Y \) such that \( f \circ j \) is a constant map, the universal property of \( Ff \) gives a canonical map \( g: F \to Ff \) sending \( x \mapsto (j(x), \gamma_{j(x)}) = (j(x), \gamma_\ast) \):

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
F & \xrightarrow{\ j \ } & X \\
\downarrow{\ g } & \searrow & \downarrow{\ i } \\
Ff & \xrightarrow{\ f \ } & Nf \\
\downarrow{\ p } & & \downarrow{\ f } \\
\{\ast\} & \xrightarrow{\ } & Y
\end{array}
\]

**Definition 3.0.10.** The sequence \( F \xrightarrow{j} X \xrightarrow{f} Y \) is called a homotopy fibration sequence if the induced map \( g: F \to Ff \) is a homotopy equivalence.

**Corollary 3.0.11.** If \( F \to X \to Y \) is a homotopy fibration sequence, then there is a long exact sequence of homotopy groups

\[
\cdots \to \pi_{n+1}(Y) \to \pi_n(F) \to \pi_n(X) \to \pi_n(Y) \to \cdots
\]

**Remark 3.0.12.** There is a dual construction. Namely, any map \( f: X \to Y \) can be factored as a composition of a cofibration followed by a homotopy equivalence. This involves a construction called the mapping cylinder of \( f \), and denoted by \( Mf \). The mapping cylinder is defined by

\[
Mf = Y \cup_f (X \times I) = Y \sqcup (X \times I) / f(x) \sim (x, 0)
\]

Then the natural inclusion \( j: X \hookrightarrow Mf \) sending \( x \mapsto (x, 1) \in Mf \) is a cofibration, and the projection \( p: Mf \to Y \) is a homotopy equivalence.

**Definition 3.0.13.** The homotopy cofiber \( Cf \) of the map \( f \) is defined by \( Cf = Mf / j(X) \). This is the mapping cone of the map \( f: X \to Y \).

For the details, see [May99, Chapters 6—8].
Bibliography


[BMP14] Yuri Berest, Daniel Miller, and Sasha Patotski. Lecture notes on homological algebra. 2014. 31, 33, 44, 84


146


